



Standard Co-Emulation  
Modeling Interface (SCE-MI)  
Reference Manual

Version 2.4

November 2016

Copyright © 2003-2016 by Accellera Systems Initiative Inc. All rights reserved.

Electronic copies of this manual may be downloaded at [www.accelera.org](http://www.accelera.org).

## Notices

The information contained in this manual represents the definition of the SCE-MI as reviewed and released by Accellera Systems Initiative (Accellera) in November 2016.

Attention is called to the possibility that implementation of this standard may require use of subject matter covered by patent rights. By publication of this standard, no position is taken with respect to the existence or validity of any patent rights in connection therewith. Accellera Systems Initiative is not responsible for identifying Essential Patent Claims for which a license may be required, for conducting inquiries into the legal validity or scope of Patent Claims or determining whether any licensing terms or conditions provided in connection with submission of a Letter of Assurance, if any, or in any licensing agreements are reasonable or non-discriminatory. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, is entirely their own responsibility. Further information may be obtained from the Accellera Systems Initiative IP Rights Committee.

Accellera reserves the right to make changes to the SCE-MI and this manual in subsequent revisions and makes no warranties whatsoever with respect to the completeness, accuracy, or applicability of the information in this manual, when used for production design and/or development.

Accellera does not endorse any particular simulator or other CAE tool that is based on the SCE-MI.

Suggestions for improvements to the SCE-MI and/or to this manual are welcome. They should be sent to the SCE-MI email reflector or to the address below.

The current Working Group's website address is

<http://workspace.accellera.org/apps/org/workgroup/itc>

Information about Accellera and membership enrollment can be obtained by inquiring at [www.accellera.org](http://www.accellera.org) or at the address below.

Published as: SCE-MI Reference Manual  
Version 2.4 Release, November 2016.

Published by: Accellera Systems Initiative Inc.  
8698 Elk Grove Blvd.  
Suite 1, #114  
Elk Grove, CA 95624  
Phone: (916) 670-1056

Printed in the United States of America.

## Contributions

The following individuals were major contributors to the creation of the original version of this standard: Duaine Pryor, Jason Andrews, Brian Bailey, John Stickley, Linda Prowse-Fossler, Gerard Mas, John Colley, Jan Johnson, and Andy Eliopoulos.

The following individuals contributed to the creation, editing and review of the SCE-MI Reference Manual Version 2.4

Brian Bailey	Independent Consultant	ITC Workgroup Chair
Per Bojsen	AMD	
John Stickley	Mentor Graphics	
Ajeya Prabhakar	Broadcom	
Mike Laisne	Qualcomm	

The following individuals contributed to the creation, editing and review of the SCE-MI Reference Manual Version 2.3.

Brian Bailey	Independent Consultant	ITC Workgroup Chair
Per Bojsen	AMD	
John Stickley	Mentor Graphics	
Ajeya Prabhakar	Broadcom	
Ramesh Chandra	Qualcomm	
Mike Laisne	Qualcomm	
Janick Bergeron	Synopsys	

The following individuals contributed to the creation, editing and review of the SCE-MI Reference Manual Version 2.2. The companies associated with each individual are those that they were working for when the contribution was made.

Brian Bailey	Independent Consultant	ITC Workgroup Chair
Per Bojsen	AMD	
John Stickley	Mentor Graphics	
Jaekwang Lee	Cadence	
Ajeya Prabhakar	Broadcom	
Ramesh Chandra	Qualcomm	
Ping Tseng	Cadence	
James Wang	Cadence	
Philippe Georgelin	STMicroelectronics	
Gary Howard	Intel	

The following individuals contributed to the creation, editing and review of the SCE-MI Reference Manual Version 2.1.

Brian Bailey	Independent Consultant	ITC Workgroup Chair
--------------	------------------------	---------------------

Per Bojsen	AMD
Pramod Chandraiah	Cadence
Shabtay Matalon	Cadence
Steve Seeley	Cadence
John Stickley	Mentor Graphics
Ying-Tsai Chang	Springsoft
Amy Lim	Cadence
Ajeya Prabhakar	Broadcom
Ramesh Chandra	Qualcomm
Russ Vreeland	Broadcom

The following individuals contributed to the creation, editing and review of the SCE-MI Reference Manual Version 2.0

Brian Bailey	Independent Consultant	ITC Workgroup Chair
Per Bojsen	AMD	
Shabtay Matalon	Cadence	
Duiane Pryor	Mentor Graphics	
John Stickley	Mentor Graphics	
Russell Vreeland	Broadcom	
Edmund Fong	AMD	
Jason Rothfuss	Cadence	
Bryan Sniderman	AMD	

The following individuals contributed to the creation, editing, and review of SCE-MI Reference Manual Version 1.1.0

Jason Andrews	Axis	
Brian Bailey	Independent Consultant	ITC Workgroup Chair
Per Bojsen	Zaiq Technologies	
Dennis Brophy	Mentor Graphics	
Joseph Bulone	ST Microelectronics	
Andrea Castelnovo	ST Microelectronics	
Fabrice Charpentier	ST Microelectronics	
Damien Deneault	Zaiq Technologies	
Andy Eliopoulos	Cadence	
Vassilios Gerousis	Infineon	
Richard Hersemeule	ST Microelectronics	
Jan Johnson	Mentor Graphics	
Matt Kopser	Cadence	
Todd Massey	Verisity	

Shabtay Matalon

Cadence

Richard Newell

Aptix

Nish Parikh

Synopsys

Duiane Pryor

Mentor Graphics

SCE-MI Subcommittee Chair

Joe Sestrich

Zaiq Technologies

John Stickley

Mentor Graphics

Russell Vreeland

Broadcom

Irit Zilberberg

Cadence

or to prior versions of this standard.

## Revision history:

Version 1.0	05/29/03
Version 1.1	1/13/05
Version 2.0	03/22/07
Version 2.1	12/21/2010
Version 2.2	01/20/2014
Version 2.3	06/01/2015
Version 2.4	11/16/2016

## STATEMENT OF USE OF ACCELLERA STANDARDS

Accellera standards documents are developed within Accellera and the Technical Committee of Accellera Systems Initiative Inc. Accellera develops its standards through a consensus development process, approved by its members and board of directors, which brings together volunteers representing varied viewpoints and interests to achieve the final product. Volunteers are not necessarily members of Accellera and serve without compensation. While Accellera administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the consensus development process, Accellera does not independently evaluate, test, or verify the accuracy of any of the information contained in its standards.

Use of an Accellera Standard is wholly voluntary. Accellera disclaims liability for any personal injury, property or other damage, of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential, or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, or reliance upon this, or any other Accellera Standard document.

Accellera does not warrant or represent the accuracy or content of the material contained herein, and expressly disclaims any express or implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or suitability for a specific purpose, or that the use of the material contained herein is free from patent infringement. Accellera Standards documents are supplied “AS IS.”

The existence of an Accellera Standard does not imply that there are no other ways to produce, test, measure, purchase, market, or provide other goods and services related to the scope of an Accellera Standard. Furthermore, the viewpoint expressed at the time a standard is approved and issued is subject to change due to developments in the state of the art and comments received from users of the standard. Every Accellera Standard is subjected to review periodically for revision and update. Users are cautioned to check to determine that they have the latest edition of any Accellera Standard.

In publishing and making this document available, Accellera is not suggesting or rendering professional or other services for, or on behalf of, any person or entity. Nor is Accellera undertaking to perform any duty owed by any other person or entity to another. Any person utilizing this, and any other Accellera Standards document, should rely upon the advice of a competent professional in determining the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances.

Interpretations: Occasionally questions may arise regarding the meaning of portions of standards as they relate to specific applications. When the need for interpretations is brought to the attention of Accellera, Accellera will initiate action to prepare appropriate responses. Since Accellera Standards represent a consensus of concerned interests, it is important to ensure that any interpretation has also received the concurrence of a balance of interests. For this reason, Accellera and the members of its Technical Committee are not able to provide an instant response to interpretation requests except in those cases where the matter has previously received formal consideration.

Comments for revision of Accellera Standards are welcome from any interested party, regardless of membership affiliation with Accellera. Suggestions for changes in documents should be in the form of a proposed change of text, together with appropriate supporting comments. Comments on standards and requests for interpretations should be addressed to:

Accellera Systems Initiative  
8698 Elk Grove Blvd.  
Suite 1, #114  
Elk Grove, CA 95624  
USA  
[www.accelera.org](http://www.accelera.org)

Accellera is the sole entity that may authorize the use of Accellera-owned certification marks and/or trademarks to indicate compliance with the materials set forth herein.

Authorization to copy portions of any individual standard for internal or personal use must be granted by Accellera, provided that permission is obtained from and any required fee is paid to Accellera. To arrange for authorization please contact Lynn Bannister, Accellera, 8698 Elk Grove Blvd. Suite 1, #114, Elk Grove, CA 95624, phone (916) 670-1056, e-mail [lynn@accelera.org](mailto:lynn@accelera.org). Permission to copy portions of any individual standard for educational classroom use can also be obtained from Accellera.

# Table of Contents

<b>1. OVERVIEW.....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 SCOPE.....	1
1.2 PURPOSE.....	1
1.3 USAGE.....	2
1.4 PERFORMANCE GOALS.....	2
1.5 DOCUMENT CONVENTIONS.....	3
1.6 CONTENTS OF THIS STANDARD.....	3
<b>2. REFERENCES.....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>3. DEFINITIONS.....</b>	<b>5</b>
3.1 TERMINOLOGY.....	5
3.1.1 <i>abstraction bridge</i> .....	5
3.1.2 <i>abstraction gasket</i> .....	5
3.1.3 <i>behavioral model</i> .....	5
3.1.4 <i>bridge netlist</i> .....	5
3.1.5 <i>co-emulation</i> .....	5
3.1.6 <i>co-modeling</i> .....	5
3.1.7 <i>controlled clock (cclock)</i> .....	6
3.1.8 <i>controlled time</i> .....	6
3.1.9 <i>co-simulation</i> .....	6
3.1.10 <i>cycle stamping</i> .....	6
3.1.11 <i>don't care duty cycle</i> .....	7
3.1.12 <i>device or design under test (DUT)</i> .....	7
3.1.13 <i>DUT proxy</i> .....	7
3.1.14 <i>fastest clock</i> .....	7
3.1.15 <i>hardware model</i> .....	7
3.1.16 <i>hardware side</i> .....	7
3.1.17 <i>infrastructure linkage process</i> .....	8
3.1.18 <i>macros</i> .....	8
3.1.19 <i>message</i> .....	8
3.1.20 <i>message channel</i> .....	8
3.1.21 <i>message port</i> .....	8
3.1.22 <i>message port proxy</i> .....	8
3.1.23 <i>negedge</i> .....	8
3.1.24 <i>posedge</i> .....	8
3.1.25 <i>service loop</i> .....	8
3.1.26 <i>software model</i> .....	8
3.1.27 <i>software side</i> .....	8
3.1.28 <i>structural model</i> .....	9
3.1.29 <i>transaction</i> .....	9
3.1.30 <i>transactor</i> .....	9
3.1.31 <i>uncontrolled clock (uclock)</i> .....	9
3.1.32 <i>uncontrolled reset</i> .....	9
3.1.33 <i>uncontrolled time</i> .....	9
3.1.34 <i>untimed model</i> .....	9
3.2 ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS.....	9
<b>4. USE MODELS.....</b>	<b>11</b>
4.1 MACRO-BASED MESSAGE PASSING INTERFACE.....	12
4.1.1 <i>High-level description</i> .....	12
4.2 SUPPORT FOR ENVIRONMENTS.....	13
4.2.1 <i>Multi-threaded environments</i> .....	13
4.2.2 <i>Single-threaded environments</i> .....	13

4.3	USERS OF THE INTERFACE.....	13
4.3.1	<i>End-user</i> .....	13
4.3.2	<i>Transactor implementer</i> .....	14
4.3.3	<i>SCE-MI infrastructure implementor</i> .....	14
4.4	BRIDGING LEVELS OF MODELING ABSTRACTION.....	14
4.4.1	<i>Untimed software level modeling abstraction</i> .....	14
4.4.2	<i>Cycle-accurate hardware level modeling abstraction</i> .....	15
4.4.3	<i>Messages and transactions</i> .....	16
4.4.4	<i>Controlled and uncontrolled time</i> .....	17
4.5	WORK FLOW.....	18
4.5.1	<i>Software model compilation</i> .....	19
4.5.2	<i>Infrastructure linkage</i> .....	19
4.5.3	<i>Hardware model elaboration</i> .....	19
4.5.4	<i>Software model construction and binding</i> .....	19
4.6	MACRO-BASED SCE-MI INTERFACE COMPONENTS.....	19
4.6.1	<i>Hardware side interface components</i> .....	19
4.6.2	<i>Software side interface components</i> .....	20
4.7	FUNCTION-BASED INTERFACE.....	20
4.7.1	<i>Overview</i> .....	20
4.7.2	<i>The DPI is API-less</i> .....	20
4.7.3	<i>Define a function in one language, call it from the other</i> .....	20
4.7.4	<i>The function call is the transaction</i> .....	22
4.7.5	<i>Function calls provide mid level of abstraction - not to high, not to low</i> .....	22
4.7.6	<i>SystemVerilog DPI is already a standard</i> .....	22
4.7.7	<i>DPI datatypes</i> .....	23
4.7.8	<i>Context handling</i> .....	23
4.7.9	<i>SV-Connect – Using DPI with SystemVerilog HVL</i> .....	25
4.8	PIPE-BASED INTERFACE.....	31
4.8.1	<i>Overview</i> .....	31
4.8.2	<i>Streaming pipes vs. TLM FIFOs</i> .....	32
4.8.3	<i>Reference vs. optimized implementations of transaction pipes</i> .....	33
4.8.4	<i>Deadlock avoidance</i> .....	34
4.8.5	<i>Input pipe</i> .....	34
4.8.6	<i>Output pipe</i> .....	35
4.8.7	<i>Implementation defined buffer depth for pipes, user defined buffer depth for FIFOs</i> .....	36
4.8.8	<i>Variable length messaging</i> .....	36
4.8.9	<i>Clocked pipes</i> .....	38
4.9	BACKWARD COMPATIBILITY AND COEXISTENCE OF FUNCTION- AND PIPES-BASED APPLICATIONS WITH MACRO-BASED APPLICATIONS.....	39
4.9.1	<i>What does not change?</i> .....	39
4.9.2	<i>Error handling, initialization, and shutdown API</i> .....	40
4.9.3	<i>Requirements and limitations for mixing macro-based models with function- and pipe-based models</i> <i>40</i>	
4.9.4	<i>Definition of macro-based vs. function- and pipe-based models</i> .....	40
4.9.5	<i>Requirements for a function- or pipe-based model</i> .....	41
4.9.6	<i>Subset of DPI for SCE-MI 2</i> .....	41
4.9.7	<i>Use of SCE-MI DPI subset with Verilog and VHDL</i> .....	41
4.9.8	<i>Support for multiple messages in 0-time</i> .....	41
4.10	SCOPE OF CALLING DPI EXPORTED FUNCTIONS.....	42
4.10.1	<i>The calling application is linked with the simulation kernel:</i> .....	42
4.10.2	<i>Calling application is not linked with the simulation kernel:</i> .....	43
4.10.3	<i>DPI function calls are deterministic</i> .....	43
4.11	BACKDOOR MEMORY AND REGISTER APIS.....	44
<b>5.</b>	<b>FORMAL SPECIFICATION.....</b>	<b>45</b>
5.1	GENERAL.....	45

5.1.1	<i>Reserved namespaces</i> .....	45
5.1.2	<i>Header files</i> .....	45
5.1.3	<i>Const argument types</i> .....	45
5.1.4	<i>Argument lifetimes</i> .....	45
5.1.5	<i>SCE-MI compliance</i> .....	45
5.2	MACRO-BASED HARDWARE SIDE INTERFACE MACROS.....	45
5.2.1	<i>Dual-ready protocol</i> .....	46
5.2.2	<i>SceMiMessageInPort macro</i> .....	46
5.2.3	<i>SceMiMessageOutPort macro</i> .....	49
5.2.4	<i>SceMiClockPort macro</i> .....	51
5.2.5	<i>SceMiClockControl macro</i> .....	55
5.2.6	<i>SCE-MI 2 support for clock definitions</i> .....	59
5.3	MACRO-BASED INFRASTRUCTURE LINKAGE .....	59
5.3.1	<i>Parameters</i> .....	59
5.4	MACRO-BASED SOFTWARE SIDE INTERFACE - C++ API.....	61
5.4.1	<i>Primitive data types</i> .....	61
5.4.2	<i>Miscellaneous interface issues</i> .....	61
5.4.3	<i>Class SceMi - SCE-MI software side interface</i> .....	64
5.4.4	<i>Class SceMiParameters - parameter access</i> .....	69
5.4.5	<i>Class SceMiMessageData - message data object</i> .....	72
5.4.6	<i>Class SceMiMessageInPortProxy</i> .....	74
5.4.7	<i>Class SceMiMessageOutPortProxy</i> .....	76
5.5	MACRO-BASED SOFTWARE SIDE INTERFACE - C API .....	77
5.5.1	<i>Primitive data types</i> .....	77
5.5.2	<i>Miscellaneous interface support issues</i> .....	78
5.5.3	<i>SceMi - SCE-MI software side interface</i> .....	79
5.5.4	<i>SceMiParameters - parameter access</i> .....	80
5.5.5	<i>SceMiMessageData - message data object</i> .....	81
5.5.6	<i>SceMiMessageInPortProxy - message input port proxy</i> .....	82
5.5.7	<i>SceMiMessageOutPortProxy - message output port proxy</i> .....	83
5.6	FUNCTION-BASED INTERFACE.....	83
5.6.1	<i>The DPI C-layer</i> .....	83
5.6.2	<i>The DPI SystemVerilog layer</i> .....	90
5.6.3	<i>SV-Connect – Using DPI with SystemVerilog HVL</i> .....	91
5.7	TIME ACCESS .....	93
5.8	PIPES-BASED INTERFACE: TRANSACTION PIPES .....	95
5.8.1	<i>SCE-MI 2 pipes compliance</i> .....	95
5.8.2	<i>Transaction pipes</i> .....	95
5.8.3	<i>Pipe handles</i> .....	112
5.8.4	<i>Transaction pipes API: blocking, thread-aware interface</i> .....	112
5.8.5	<i>Basic transaction pipes API: non-blocking, thread-neutral interface</i> .....	117
5.9	DIRECT MEMORY INTERFACE.....	145
5.9.1	<i>Block interfaces:</i> .....	147
5.9.2	<i>Word interface</i> .....	148
5.9.3	<i>Block of bytes interface</i> .....	149
5.9.4	<i>File interface</i> .....	149
5.9.5	<i>Pattern fill interface</i> .....	150
5.10	REGISTER ACCESS INTERFACE .....	150
5.11	STOPPING A SIMULATION .....	151
<b>APPENDIX A:</b>	<b>EXAMPLE USING DYNAMIC CALLBACKS</b> .....	<b>152</b>
<b>APPENDIX B:</b>	<b>VHDL SCE-MI MACROS PACKAGE</b> .....	<b>153</b>
<b>APPENDIX C:</b>	<b>MACRO-BASED MULTI-CLOCK HARDWARE SIDE INTERFACE EXAMPLE</b> .....	<b>154</b>
<b>APPENDIX D:</b>	<b>USING TRANSACTION PIPES COMPATIBLY WITH ACCELLERA SYSTEMS</b>	
<b>INITIATIVE'S SYSTEMC-TLM APPLICATIONS</b>	<b>.....</b>	<b>158</b>

<b>APPENDIX E:</b>	<b>SAMPLE HEADER FILES FOR THE MACRO-BASED SCE-MI .....</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>APPENDIX F:</b>	<b>SAMPLE HEADER FILE FOR BASIC TRANSACTION-PIPES C-SIDE API.....</b>	<b>179</b>
<b>APPENDIX G:</b>	<b>SAMPLE HEADER FILE FOR SCE-MI DMI INTERFACE .....</b>	<b>185</b>
<b>APPENDIX H:</b>	<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY .....</b>	<b>188</b>

# 1. Overview

The broad intent of the standard is to create a modeling interface that meets all the requirements for simulation, and enables transactor models to be easily migrated from simulation to emulation, as long as they adhere to the requirements resulting from the additional demands of emulators.

The Verilog language was extended to create SystemVerilog (see Bibliography [B4]) and as part of this new standard a new interface was created called the Direct Programming Interface (DPI). This interface is intended to allow the efficient connection of an HDL model with a C model, fulfilling one of the goals of this standard. This standard has thus tried to adopt the DPI interface for SystemVerilog wherever possible and has tried to add additional capabilities to facilitate the efficient connection of the host based code with an emulator through additional mechanisms such as pipes.

Note: Verilog is now officially incorporated into SystemVerilog. When SystemVerilog is mentioned in a design context it can also mean Verilog.

It is customary for Accellera standards to have been verified in practice before a standard is established. This ensures that the basis for the standard has been tested in the field on a number of real cases and is thus likely to be reasonably stable.

## 1.1 Scope

The scope of this document shall be restricted to what is specifically referred to herein as **the Standard Co-Emulation API: Modeling Interface (SCE-MI)**.

## 1.2 Purpose

There is an urgent need for the EDA industry to meet the exploding verification requirements of SoC design teams. While the industry has delivered verification performance in the form of a variety of emulation and rapid prototyping platforms, there remains the problem of connecting them into SoC modeling environments while realizing their full performance potential. This standard defines a multi-channel communication interface that addresses these challenges and caters to the needs of verification (both simulation and emulation) end-users and suppliers and providers of verification IP. In many places in this document it makes reference to emulation as this was the focus of the macro-based v1.X version of this specification. The new function-based and pipes capabilities added in the 2.X version of the specification are applicable to both simulation and emulation environments but each case isn't defined as such because it would unnecessarily and significantly increase the length of the standard.

The SCE-MI can be used to solve the following verification tool user problems.

- Most emulators offer some proprietary APIs in addition to SCE-MI 1.1 API. The proliferation of APIs makes it very difficult for software-based verification products to port to the different emulators, thus restricting the solutions available to emulator users. This also leads to lower productivity and lower return on investment (ROI) for emulator users who build their own solutions.
- The emulation “APIs” that exist today are oriented to gate-level and not system-level verification.
- The industry needs an API that takes full advantage of emulation performance.
- A method is provided that enables the portability of transactor models between emulation systems, making it possible for IP providers to write a single model. In addition, with the extensions for the 2.0 version of this standard, the standard enables transactor models to be migrated from a simulation environment into an emulation environment as long as certain requirements are met. Models will also migrate in the other direction without any changes.

The SCE-MI can also be used to solve the following verification tool provider problems.

- Emulator users are reluctant to invest in building applications on proprietary APIs.
- Traditional simulator APIs like programmable language interface (PLI) and VHDL PLI slow down emulators.
- Third parties are reluctant to invest in building applications on proprietary APIs.
- The establishment of a common API that supports both simulators and emulators will encourage more third part model developers to make transactor available that are also suitable for emulators.

## 1.3 Usage

This document specifies a modeling interface which provides multiple channels of communication that allow software models detailing system behavior to connect to structural models describing implementation of a device under test (DUT). Each communication channel is designed to transport un-timed messages of arbitrary abstraction between its two end points or “ports” of a channel.

These message channels are not meant to connect software models to each other, but rather to connect software proxy models to message port interfaces on the hardware side of the design. The means to interconnect software models to each other shall be provided by a software modeling and simulation environment, such as SystemC, which is beyond the scope of this document.

Although the software side of a system can be modeled at several different levels of abstraction, including un-timed, cycle-accurate, and even gate-level, the focus of this standard is to interface purely un-timed software models with a register transfer level- (RTL) or gate-level DUT.

This can be summarized with the following recommendations regarding the API:

- This standard should not be used to bridge event-based or sub cycle-accurate simulation environments with the hardware side.
- It is possible, but not ideal, to use this to bridge cycle accurate simulation environments.
- This standard is best used for bridging an un-timed simulation environment with a cycle-accurate simulation environment.

Note: There are many references in the document to SystemC (see Section 2 – References [4]) as the modeling environment for un-timed software models. This is because, although SystemC is capable of modeling at the cycle accurate RTL abstraction level, it is also considered ideally suited for un-timed modeling. As such, it has been chosen for use in many of the examples in this document. However it should not be inferred that the only possible environment that SCE-MI supports is SystemC and could equally be ANSI C, C++, or a number of other languages.

## 1.4 Performance Goals

While software side of the described interface is generic in its ability to be used in any C/C++ modeling environment, it is designed to integrate easily with non-preemptive multi-threaded C/C++ modeling environments, such as SystemC. Similarly, its hardware side is optimized to prevent undue throttling of an emulator during a co-modeling session run.

Throughout this document the term emulation or emulator is used to denote a structural or RTL model of a DUT running in an emulator, rapid prototype, or other simulation environment, including software HDL simulators.

That said, the focus of this interface is to avoid communication bottlenecks that might become apparent when interfacing software models to an emulator as compared to interfacing them to a slower software HDL simulator or even an HDL accelerator. Such bottlenecks can severely compromise the performance of an emulator, which is otherwise very fast. Although some implementations of the interface can be more inefficient than others, it is a requirement of this standard that nothing in the specification of the interface itself renders it inherently susceptible to such bottlenecks.

For this reason, the communication channels described herein are message- or transaction-oriented, rather than event-oriented, with the idea that a single message over a channel originating from a software model can trigger dozens to hundreds of clocked events in the hardware side of the channel. Similarly, it can take

thousands of clocked events on the hardware side to generate the content of a message on a channel originating from the hardware which is ultimately destined for an un-timed software model.

## 1.5 Document Conventions

This standard uses the following documentation notations.

- Any references to actual literal names that can be found in source code, identifiers that are part of the API, file names, and other literal names are represented in `courier` font.
- Key concept words or phrases are **in bold type**. See Chapter five for further definitions of these terms.
- In this document, informative and normative text is intermixed to allow easier understanding of the concepts. The normative text is shown in regular types, and the *informative is shown in blue italicized type*.
- Note sections are included as informative material and are meant to provide the reader with an understanding of the reasoning behind certain standardization choices.

## 1.6 Contents of this Standard

The organization of the remainder of this standard is as follows:

- Chapter 2 provides references to other applicable standards that are assumed or required for this standard.
- Chapter 3 defines terms used throughout this standard.
- Chapter 4 provides an overall description and use models for the SCE Modeling Interface (SCE-MI).
- Chapter 5 is a formal functional specification of the APIs themselves.
- Appendix A provides an example using dynamic callbacks to implement a user-defined blocking send function on top of the non-blocking functions.
- Appendix B provides a VHDL package which can be used to supply SCE-MI macro component declarations to an application.
- Appendix C provides a simple multi-clock, multi-transactor schematic example and its VHDL code listing.
- Appendix D provides an example demonstrating transaction pipe compatibly with Accellera Systems Initiative's SystemC-TLM applications.
- Appendix E (Sample header files for the SCE-MI) provides headers for both C and C++ implementations.
- Appendix F Provides a sample Header File for Basic Transaction Pipes C-Side API.
- Appendix G Sample header file for the Direct Memory Interface.
- Appendix H Bibliography - provides additional documents, to which reference is made only for information or background purposes.

## 2. References

This standard shall be used in conjunction with the following publications.

[1] IEEE Std 1076-2002, IEEE Standard VHDL Language Reference Manual.

[2] IEEE Std 1364-2005, IEEE Standard for Verilog Hardware Description Language. Superseded by [3]

[3] IEEE Std 1800-2012: IEEE Standard for SystemVerilog.

[4] IEEE Std 1666-2011: IEEE Standard for SystemC.

## 3. Definitions

For the purposes of this standard, the following terms and definitions apply. *The IEEE Standard Dictionary of Electrical and Electronics Terms* (see Bibliography [B1]) should be referenced for terms not defined in this standard.

### 3.1 Terminology

This section defines the terms used in this standard.

#### 3.1.1 abstraction bridge:

A collection of abstraction gasket components that disguise a bus-cycle accurate, register transfer level, device under test (BCA RTL DUT) model as a purely untimed model. The idea is that to the untimed testbench models, the DUT itself appears untimed (see Figure 4.3) when, in fact, it is a disguised BCA model (see Figure 4.4).

#### 3.1.2 abstraction gasket:

A special model that can change the level of abstraction of data flowing from its input to output and vice versa. For example, an abstraction gasket might convert an un-timed transaction to a series of cycle accurate events. Or, it might assemble a series of events into a single message. BCASH (bus-cycle accurate shell) models and transactors are examples of abstraction gaskets.

#### 3.1.3 behavioral model:

See: untimed model.

#### 3.1.4 bridge netlist:

The bridge netlist is the top level of the user-supplied netlist of components making up the hardware side of a co-modeling process. The components typically found instantiated immediately under the bridge netlist are transactors and the DUT. By convention, the top level netlist module the user supplies to the infrastructure linker is called Bridge and, for SystemVerilog (see Reference [3])<sup>1</sup> models, is placed in a file called Bridge.v.

#### 3.1.5 co-emulation:

A shorthand notation for co-emulation modeling, also known as co-modeling. See also: co-modeling.

#### 3.1.6 co-modeling:

Although it has broader meanings outside this document, here co-modeling specifically refers to transaction-oriented co-modeling in contrast to a broader definition of co-modeling which might include event-oriented co-modeling. Also known as co-emulation modeling, transaction-oriented co-modeling describes the process of modeling and simulating a mixture of software models represented with an un-timed level of abstraction, simultaneously executing and inter-communicating through an abstraction bridge, with hardware models represented with the RTL level of abstraction, and running on an emulator or a simulator. Figure 3.1 depicts such a configuration, where the Standard Co-Emulation API - Modeling Interface (SCE-MI) is being used as the abstraction bridge. See section 3.2 for the definitions of the acronyms used here.

---

<sup>1</sup> For more information on references, see Chapter 2.

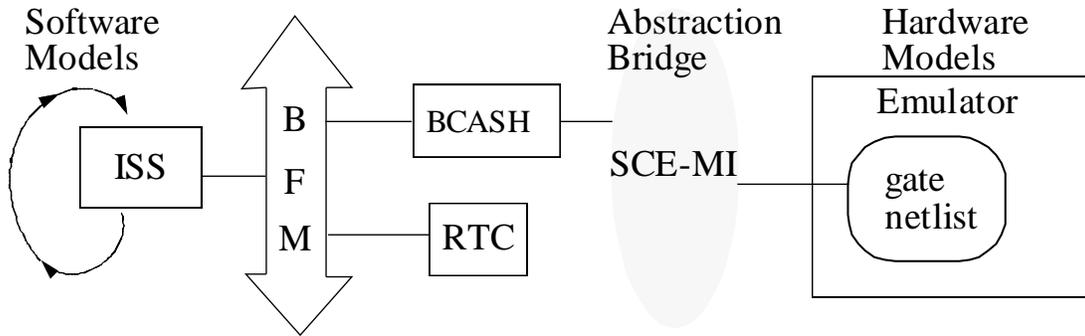


Figure 3.1 Using the SCE-MI as an abstraction bridge

Another illustration can be seen in Figure 4.2.

### 3.1.7 controlled clock (cclock):

A clock defined in the macro-based interface that drives the DUT and can be disabled by any transactor during operations that, if clocked, would result in erroneous operation of the DUT. When performing such operations, any transactor can “freeze” controlled time long enough to complete the operation before allowing clocking of the DUT to resume. The term cclock is often used throughout this document as a synonym for controlled clock.

### 3.1.8 controlled time:

Time defined in the macro-based interface which is advanced by the controlled clock and frozen when the controlled clock is suspended by one or more transactors. Operations occurring in uncontrolled time, while controlled time is frozen, appear between controlled clock cycles.

### 3.1.9 co-simulation:

The execution of software models with different levels of abstraction that interact with each other through abstraction gaskets similar to BCASH (bus-cycle accurate shell) models. Figure 3.2 illustrates such a configuration. (See section 3.2 for definitions of the acronyms used here.)

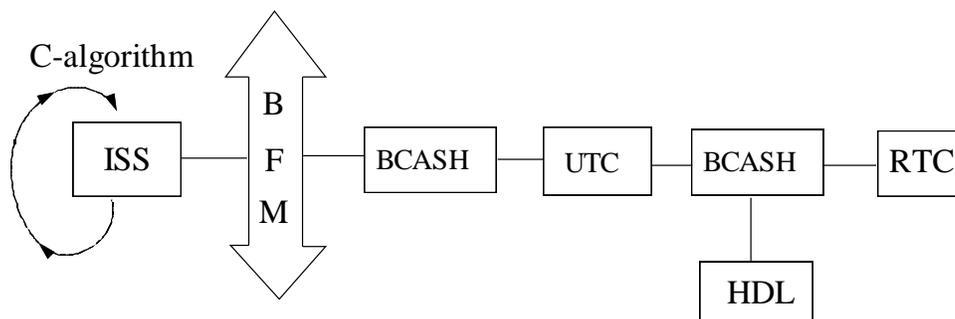


Figure 3.2 Modeling abstraction gaskets

The key difference between co-simulation and co-emulation is the former typically couples software models to a traditional HDL simulator interface through a proprietary API, whereas the latter couples software models to an emulator through an optimized transaction oriented interface, such as SCE-MI.

### 3.1.10 cycle stamping:

A process defined in the macro-based interface where messages are tagged with the number of elapsed counts of the fastest controlled clock in the hardware side of a co-modeled design.

### 3.1.11 don't care duty cycle:

A posedge active don't care duty cycle is a way of specifying a duty cycle in the macro-based interface where the user only cares about the posedge of the clock and does not care about where in the period the negedge falls, particularly in relation to other clocks in a functional simulation. In such a case, the DutyHi parameter is given as a 0. The DutyLo can be given as an arbitrary number of units which represent the whole period such that the Phase offset can still be expressed as a percentage of the period (i.e., DutyHi+DutyLo). See 5.2.4.1 for more details. A negedge active don't care duty cycle is a way of specifying a duty cycle in the macro-based interface where the user only cares about the negedge of the clock and does not care about where in the period the posedge falls, particularly in relation to other clocks in a functional simulation. In such a case, the DutyLo parameter is given as a 0. The DutyHi can be given as an arbitrary number of units that represent the whole period such that the Phase offset can still be expressed as a percentage of the period (i.e., DutyHi+DutyLo). See 5.2.4.1 for more details.

### 3.1.12 device or design under test (DUT):

A device or design under test that can be modeled in hardware and stimulated and responded to by a software testbench through an abstraction bridge such as the SCE-MI shown in Figure 4.2.

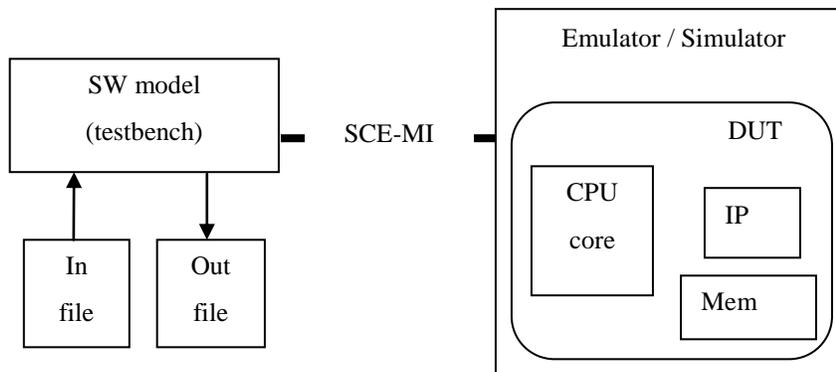


Figure 3.3 Modeling a DUT via an abstraction bridge

### 3.1.13 DUT proxy:

A model or collection of models that presents (to the rest of the system) an interface to the design under test which is un-timed. This is accomplished by a translation of un-timed messages to cycle-accurate pin activity. A DUT proxy contains one or more abstraction bridges which perform this function. If the abstraction bridge is SCE-MI, the un-timed communication is handled by message port proxy interfaces to the message channels. See Figure 4.4 for an illustration of DUT proxies.

### 3.1.14 fastest clock:

If the user instantiates a 1/1 cclock without a don't care duty cycle in the macro-based interface, then that becomes the fastest clock in the system, although it limits performance to be only half as fast as the uclock, since in this case, both edges must be scheduled on posedges of uclock.

### 3.1.15 hardware model:

A model of a block that has a structural representation (i.e., as a result of synthesis or a gate netlist generated by an appropriate tool) which is mapped onto the hardware side of a co-modeling process (i.e., an emulator, other hardware simulation platform or a simulator). It can also be real silicon (i.e., a CPU core or memory chip) plugged into an emulator or simulation accelerator.

### 3.1.16 hardware side:

See: software side.

### 3.1.17 **infrastructure linkage process:**

The process defined in the macro-based interface that reads a user description of the hardware, namely the source or bridge netlist describing the interconnect between the transactors, the DUT, and the SCE-MI interface components, and compiles that netlist into a form suitable for executing in a co-modeling session. Part of this compile process can include adding more structure to the bridge netlist it properly interfaces the user-supplied netlist to the SCE-MI infrastructure implementation components.

### 3.1.18 **macros:**

These are implementation components provided by a hardware emulator solution to implement the hardware side of the SCE-MI infrastructure in the macro-based interface, examples include: SceMiMessageInPort, SceMiMessageOutPort, SceMiClockControl, and SceMiClockPort.

### 3.1.19 **message:**

A data unit of arbitrary size and abstraction that is to be transported over a channel. Messages are generally not associated with specific clocked events, but can trigger or result from many clocks of event activity. For the most part, the term message can be used interchangeably with transaction. However, in some contexts, transaction could be thought of as including infrastructure overhead content in addition to user payload data (and handled at a lower layer of the interface), whereas the term message denotes only user payload data.

### 3.1.20 **message channel:**

A two-ended conduit of messages between the software and hardware sides of an abstraction bridge.

### 3.1.21 **message port:**

The hardware side of a message channel. Transactors use these ports to gain access to messages being sent across the channel to or from the software side.

### 3.1.22 **message port proxy:**

The software side of a message channel. DUT proxies or other software models use these proxies to gain access to messages being sent across the channel to or from the hardware side.

### 3.1.23 **negedge:**

This refers to the falling edge of a clock in the macro-based interface.

### 3.1.24 **posedge:**

This refers to the rising edge of a clock in the macro-based interface.

### 3.1.25 **service loop:**

This function or method call in the macro-based interface allows a set of software models running on a host workstation to yield access to the SCE-MI software side so any pending input or output messages on the channels can be serviced. The software needs to frequently call this throughout the co-modeling session in order to avoid backup of messages and minimize the possibility of system deadlock. In multi-threaded environments, place the service loop call in its own continually running thread. See 5.4.3.7 for more details.

### 3.1.26 **software model:**

A model of a block (hardware or software) that is simulated on the software side of a co-modeling session (i.e., the host workstation). Such a model can be an algorithm (C or C++) running on an Instruction Set Simulator (ISS), a hardware model that is modeled using an appropriate language environment, such as SystemC, or an HDL simulator.

### 3.1.27 **software side:**

This term refers to the portion of a user's design which, during a co-modeling session, runs on the host workstation, as opposed to the portion running on the emulator (which is referred to as the hardware side). The SCE-MI infrastructure itself is also considered to have software side and hardware side components.

### 3.1.28 **structural model:**

A netlist of hardware models or other structural models. Because this definition is recursive, by inference, structural models have hierarchy.

### 3.1.29 **transaction:**

See: message.

### 3.1.30 **transactor:**

A form of abstraction gasket. A transactor decomposes an un-timed transaction to a series of cycle-accurate clocked events, or, conversely, composes a series of clocked events into a single message.

### 3.1.31 **uncontrolled clock (uclock):**

A free-running system clock defined in the macro-based interface, generated internally by the SCE-MI infrastructure, which is used only within transactor modules to advance states in uncontrolled time. The term uclock is often used throughout this document as a synonym for uncontrolled clock.

### 3.1.32 **uncontrolled reset:**

This is the system reset defined in the macro-based interface, generated internally by the SCE-MI infrastructure, which is used only with transactor modules. This signal is high at the beginning of simulated time and transitions to low an arbitrary (implementation-dependent) number of uclocks later. It can be used to reset a transactor. The controlled reset is generated exactly once by the SCE-MI hardware side infrastructure at the very beginning of a co- modeling session.

### 3.1.33 **uncontrolled time:**

Time defined in the macro-based interface that is advanced by the uncontrolled clock, even when the controlled clock is suspended (and controlled time is frozen).

### 3.1.34 **untimed model:**

A block that is modeled algorithmically at the functional level and exchanges data with other models in the form of messages. An un-timed model has no notion of a clock. Rather, its operation is triggered by arriving messages and it can, in turn, trigger operations in other un-timed models by sending messages.

## 3.2 **Acronyms and abbreviations**

This section lists the acronyms and abbreviations used in this standard.

API	Application Programming Interface
BCA	Bus-Cycle Accurate model - sometimes used interchangeably with RTL model
BCASH	Bus-Cycle Accurate SHell model
BFM	Bus Functional Model
BNF	extended Backus-Naur Form
DPI	SystemVerilog Direct Programming Interface
DUT	Device or Design Under Test
EDA	Electronic Design Automation
HDL	Hardware Description Language
HVL	Hardware Verification Language High-level Verification Language
IP	Intellectual Property

ISS	Instruction Set Simulator
PLI	Programmable Language Interface
RTC	Register Transfer Level C model
RTL	Register Transfer Level
SCE-API	Standard Co-Emulation API
SCE-MI	Standard Co-Emulation API - Modeling Interface
UT or UTC	Untimed C model
VHDL	VHSIC Hardware Description Language

## 4. Use models

SCE-MI directly supports three primary use models for connecting a model written in HDL to a model running on a workstation. Each of these use-models is enabled by a corresponding interface. The software side of the interface allows access from the workstation side, while the hardware side of the interface allows access from the HDL side. The three interfaces are a (message-passing) macro-based interface which was standardized in the previous SCE-MI 1.1 version of this standard and has been updated and extended in the SCE-MI 2 release, secondly a new function-based interface based on the SystemVerilog DPI (see section 4.7) and thirdly, a new pipes-based interface (see section 4.8). These are shown in Figure 4.1.

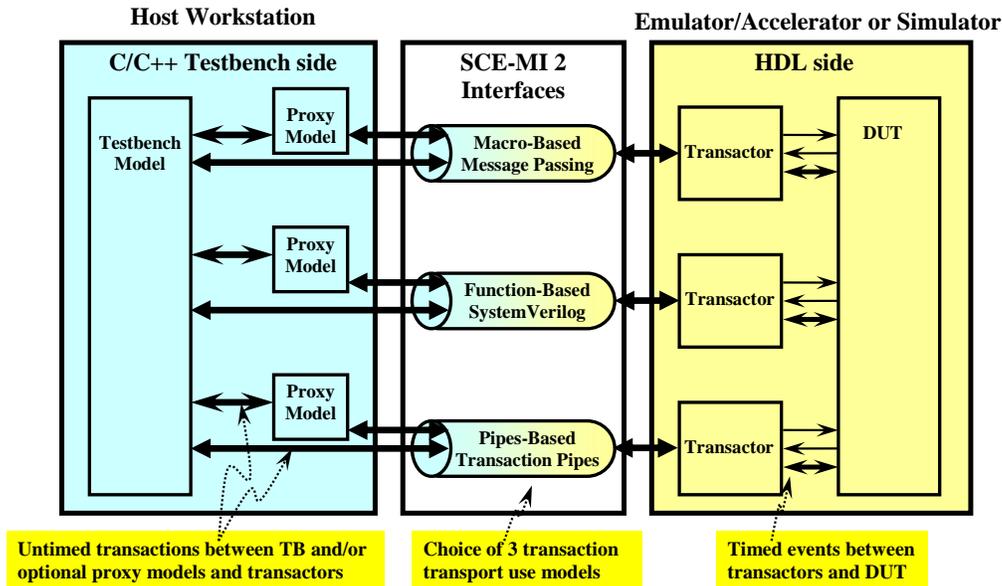


Figure 4.1 Three Interfaces

Each of these three interfaces are self-contained such that a model that utilizes any one of them will be able to communicate with a model on the other side of an interface so long as the implementation of the interface also supports that interface. Models that use multiple interfaces will require complete support for each interface plus any additional requirements brought about by the interface compatibility issues.

A significant difference between the function-based interface and the two others is that an implementation running on a simulator (or on an emulator) that supports a larger subset of DPI than the one defined by SCE-MI 2 function-based interface is still compatible with the function-based interface standard. In addition, the function-based implementation on a simulator is not required to flag errors as long as it is compliant with DPI as defined by the SystemVerilog LRM (see Section 2 References[3]). This is contrary to the macro-based and pipe-based interfaces when all implementations must support the same set of features define by these interfaces on any implementation. For SCE-MI 2 a subset of the DPI was chosen that is more easily synthesized to support current emulation technology. As time goes on, it may become feasible for emulators to support a broader subset of the DPI and the standard may be expanded. The standard thus defines the minimum sub-set of DPI features that should be supported by the SCE-MI 2 function-based interface to be deemed SCE-MI 2 compliant, but each implementation is free to add additional features of the SystemVerilog DPI standard to their function-based interface implementation.

However, this impacts what it means for a model to be portable and SCE-MI 2 function-based compliant. To be portable, the model can only utilize the function-based DPI features defined in this standard. Using any additional features assumed to be available by a specific implementation make it non-portable to other

implementations. It also impacts model compliance with SCE-MI 2 function-based interface as a model that uses the additional DPI features makes it SCE-MI 2 function-based non-compliant model.

Each of the three interfaces constitutes a corresponding use model carrying the same name described in the subsequent sections of the SCE-MI 2 specification.

## 4.1 Macro-based Message Passing Interface

This section of the document will describe the macro-based message passing environment. The description of the function call mechanism will be given in section 4.7 and the pipes-based interface in section 4.8. This message passing interface is intended to be used in several different use models and by several different groups of users.

### 4.1.1 High-level description

Figure 4.2 shows a high-level view of how SCE-MI interconnects untimed software models to structural hardware transactor and DUT models.

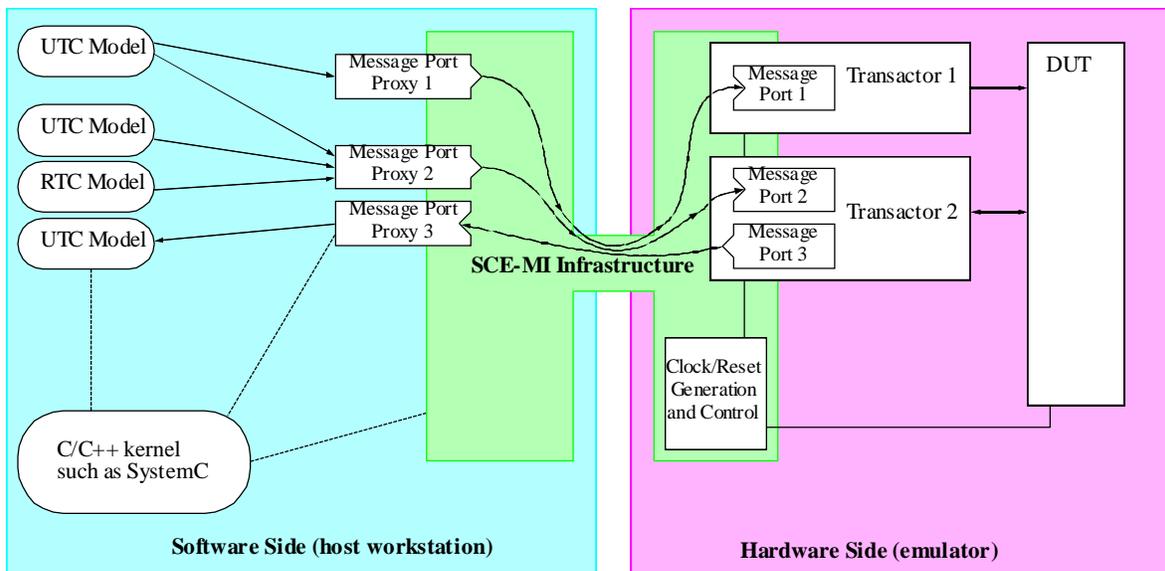


Figure 4.2 High-level view of run-time components

The SCE-MI provides a transport infrastructure between the emulator and host workstation sides of each channel, which interconnects *transactor* models in the emulator to C (untimed or RTL) models on the workstation. For purposes of this document, the term *emulator* can be used interchangeably with any simulator capable of executing RTL or gate-level models, including software HDL simulators.

These interconnects are provided in the form of message channels that run between the *software side* and the *hardware side* of the SCE-MI infrastructure. Each message channel has two ends. The end on the software side is called a *message port proxy*, which is a C++ object or C function that gives API access to the channel. The end on the hardware side is a *message port*, which is instantiated inside a transactor and connected to other components in the transactor. Each message channel is either an input or an output channel with respect to the hardware side.

Note: While all exposition in this standard is initially given using C++, C equivalents exist for all functionality. See Chapter 5 for more details.

*Message channels* are not unidirectional or bidirectional busses in the sense of hardware signals, but are more like network sockets that use message passing protocols. It is the job of the transactors to serve as *abstraction*

*gaskets* and decompose messages arriving on input channels from the software side into sequences of cycle-accurate events which can be clocked into the DUT. For the other direction of flow, transactors recombine sequences of events coming from the DUT back into messages to be sent via output channels to the software side.

In addition, the SCE-MI infrastructure provides clock (and reset) generation and shared clock control using handshake signals with the transactor in the macro-based use model. This allows the transactor to “freeze” *controlled time* while performing message composition and decomposition operations.

## 4.2 Support for environments

The SCE-MI provides support for both single and multi-threaded environments.

### 4.2.1 Multi-threaded environments

The SCE-MI is designed to couple easily with multi-threaded environments, such as SystemC, yet it also functions just as easily in single-threaded environments, such as simple C programs. SCE-MI macro-based interface provides a special *service loop* function (see 5.4.3.7), which can be called from an application to give the SCE-MI infrastructure an opportunity to service its communication channels. Calls to service loop result in the sending of queued input messages to hardware and the dispatch of arriving output messages to the software models.

While there is no thread-specific code inside the service loop function (or elsewhere in the SCE-MI), this function is designed to be called periodically from a dedicated thread within a multi-threaded environment, so the interface is automatically serviced while other threads are running.

When only using the function-based or pipes-based use model, calling the service loop is not required.

### 4.2.2 Single-threaded environments

In a single-threaded environment, calls to the service loop function in the macro-based use model can be “sprinkled” throughout the application code at strategically placed points to frequently yield control of the CPU to the SCE-MI infrastructure so it can service its messages channels.

## 4.3 Users of the interface

A major goal of this specification is to address the needs of three target audiences, each with a distinct interest in using the interface. The target audiences are:

- end-user
- transactor implementor
- SCE-MI infrastructure implementor

### 4.3.1 End-user

The *end-user* is interested in quickly and easily establishing a bridge between a software testbench which can be composed of high-level, *untimed*, algorithmic software models, and a hardware DUT which can be modeled at the RTL, cycle-accurate level of abstraction.

While end-users might be aware of the need for a “gasket” that bridges these two levels of abstraction, they want the creation of these *abstraction bridges* to be as painless and automated as possible. Ideally, the end-users are not required to be familiar with the details of SCE-MI API. Rather, on the *hardware side*, they might wish to rely on the *transactor implementer* (see 4.3.2) to provide predefined *transactor* models which can directly interface to their DUT. This removes any requirement for them to be familiar with any of the SCE-MI hardware-side interface definitions. Similarly, on the *software side*, the end-users can also rely on the transactor implementers to furnish them with *plug-and-play* software models, custom-tailored for a software modeling environment, such as SystemC. Such models can encapsulate the details of interfacing to the SCE-MI software side and present a fully *untimed*, easy- to-use interface to the rest of the software testbench.

### 4.3.2 Transactor implementer

The transactor implementer is familiar with the SCE-MI, but is not concerned with its implementation. The transactor implementer provides plug-and-play transactor models on the *hardware side* and proxy models on the *software side* which *end-users* can use to easily bridge their untimed software models with their RTL-represented DUT. Additionally, the transactor implementer can supply *proxy models* on the software side which provide untimed “sockets” to the transactors.

Using the models is like using any other stand-alone IP models and the details of bridging not only two different abstraction levels, but possibly two different verification platforms (such as SystemC and an emulator), is completely hidden within the implementations of the models which need to be distributed with the appropriate object code, netlists, RTL code, configuration files, and documentation.

### 4.3.3 SCE-MI infrastructure implementer

The SCE-MI infrastructure implementer is interested in furnishing a working implementation of an SCE-MI that runs on some verification platform, including both the *software side* and the *hardware side* components of the SCE-MI. For such a release to be compliant, it needs to conform to all the requirements set forth in this specification.

## 4.4 Bridging levels of modeling abstraction

The central goal of this specification is to provide an interface designed to bridge two modeling environments, each of which supports a different level of modeling abstraction.

### 4.4.1 Untimed software level modeling abstraction

Imagine a testbench consisting of several, possibly independent models, that stimulate and respond to a DUT at different interface points (as depicted in Figure 4.3). This configuration can be used to test a processor DUT which has some communications interfaces that can include an Ethernet adapter, a PCI interface, and a USB interface. The testbench can consist of several models that independently interact with these interfaces, playing their protocols and exchanging packets with them. These packets can be recoded as *messages* with the intent of verifying the processor DUT’s ability to deal with them. Initially, the system shown in Figure 4.3 might be implemented fully at the *untimed* level of abstraction by using the SystemC software modeling environment.

Suppose the ultimate desire here is to create a cycle-accurate RTL model of a design and eventually synthesize this model to gates that can be verified on a high speed emulation platform. Afterwards, however, they might also be tested with the unaltered, untimed testbench models. To do all of this requires a way of somehow bridging the untimed level of abstraction to the *bus-cycle accurate (BCA)* level.

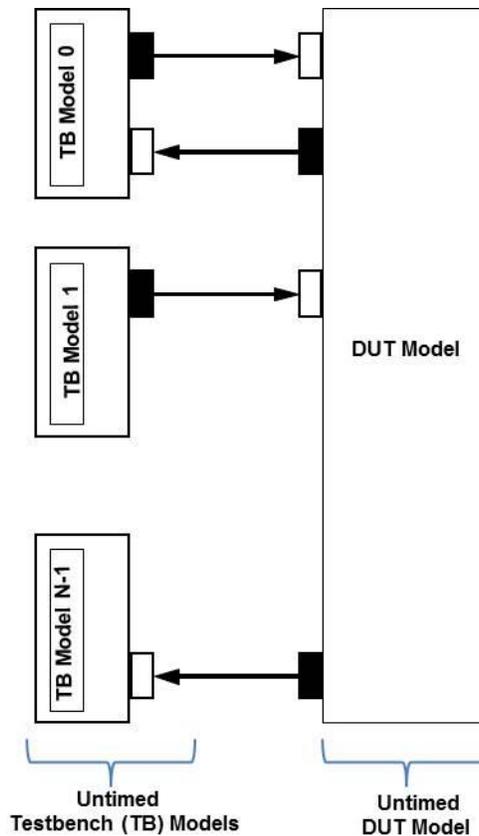


Figure 4.3 Untimed software testbench and DUT models

#### 4.4.2 Cycle-accurate hardware level modeling abstraction

Take the purely untimed system shown in Figure 4.3, “pry apart” the direct coupling between the testbench models and the untimed DUT model, and insert an *abstraction bridge* from the still untimed system testbench model to what is now a emulator resident, RTL-represented DUT. This bridge consists of a set of *DUT proxy* models, SCE-MI *message input and output port proxies*, a set of *message channels* which are transaction conduits between the software simulator and the emulator, *message input and output ports*, and a set of user implemented *transactors*. Figure 4.4 depicts this new configuration.

The SCE-MI infrastructure performs the task of serving as a transport layer that guarantees delivery of *messages* between the *message port proxy* and *message port* ends of each channel. Messages arriving on input channels are presented to the transactors through *message input ports*. Similarly, messages arriving on output channels are dispatched to the *DUT proxy* software models via *message output port proxies* which present them to the rest of the testbench as if they had come directly from the original untimed DUT model (shown in Figure 4.3). In fact, the testbench models do not know the messages have actually come from and gone to a totally different abstraction level.

The DUT input proxies accept untimed messages from various C models and send them to the message input port proxies for transport to the hardware side. The DUT output proxies establish callbacks or provide functions that monitor the message output port proxies for arrival of messages from the hardware side. In other words, the SCE-MI infrastructure *dispatches* these messages to the specific DUT proxy models to which they are addressed. Taking this discussion back to the context of users of the interface described in Figure 4.3, the *end-user* only has to know how to interface the DUT proxy models on the software side of Figure 4.4 with the transactor models on the hardware side; whereas, the *transactor implementer* authors the proxy and transactor models using the SCE-MI message port (and clock control components between them in the macro-based use model), and provides those models to the end-user.

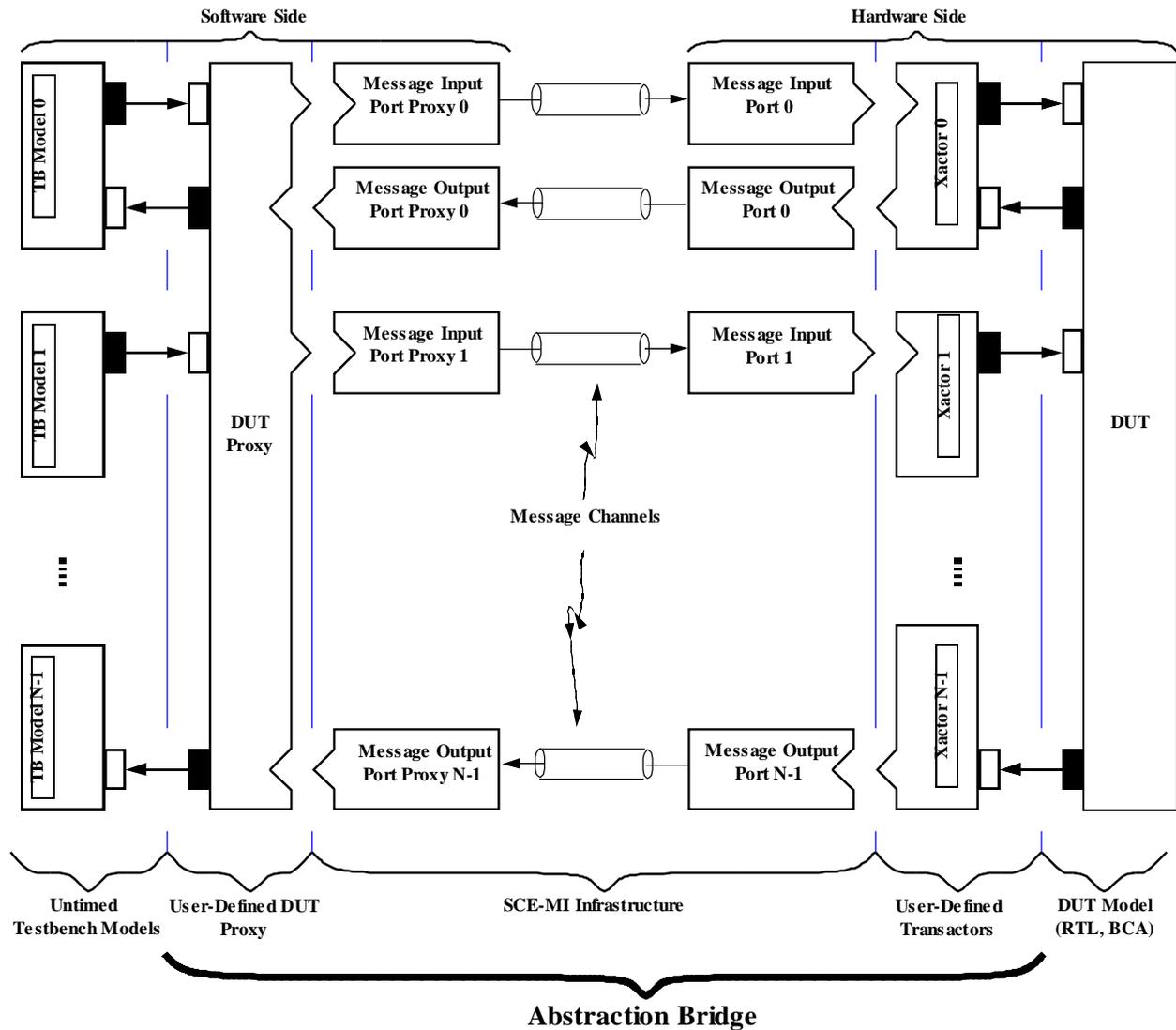


Figure 4.4 Multi-channel abstraction bridge architecture

### 4.4.3 Messages and transactions

In a purely untimed modeling environment, messages are not associated with specific clocks or events. Rather, they can be considered arbitrary data types ranging in abstraction from a simple bit, Boolean, or integer, on up to something as complex as a C++ class or even some aggregate of objects. It is in this form that messages can be transported either *by value* or *by reference* over abstract ports between fully untimed software models of the sort described in Figure 4.4 (and, in substantially more detail, in bibliography [B2]).

However, before messages can be transported over an SCE-MI message channel, they need to be serialized into a large bit vector by the DUT proxy model. Conversely, after a message arrives on a message output channel and is dispatched to a DUT output proxy model, it can be *de-serialized* back into an abstract C++ data type. At this point, it is ready for presentation at the output ports of the DUT proxy to the connected software testbench models.

Meanwhile, on the hardware side, a message arriving on the message input channel can trigger dozens to hundreds of clocks of event activity. The transactor decomposes the message data content to sequences of clocked events that are presented to the DUT hardware model inputs. Conversely, for output messages, the

transactor can accept hundreds to thousands of clocked events originating from the DUT hardware model and then assemble them into serialized bit streams which are sent back to the software side for de-serialization back into abstract data types.

For the most part, the term *message* can be used interchangeably with *transaction*. However, in some contexts, *transaction* can be thought of as including infrastructure overhead content, in addition to user payload data (and handled at a lower layer of the interface), whereas the term *message* denotes only user payload data.

#### 4.4.4 Controlled and uncontrolled time

One of the implications of converting between message bit streams and clocked events in the macro-based use model is the transactor might need to “freeze” controlled time while performing these operations so the *controlled clock* that feeds the DUT is stopped long enough for the operations to occur. In the other use modes, time on the HW side is frozen implicitly when the SW side is called.

Visualizing the transactor operations strictly in terms of controlled clock cycles, they appear between edges of the controlled clock, as shown in the *controlled time view* within Figure 4.5. But if they are shown for all cycles of the *uncontrolled clock*, the waveforms would appear more like the *uncontrolled time view* shown in Figure 4.5. In this view, the controlled clock is suspended or disabled and the DUT is “frozen in controlled time.”

Now, suppose a system has multiple controlled clocks (of possibly differing frequencies) and multiple transactors controlling them. Any one of these transactors has the option of stopping any clock. If this happens, all controlled clocks in the system stop in unison. Furthermore, all other transactors, which did not themselves stop the clock, shall still sense the clocks were globally stopped and continue to function correctly even though they themselves had no need to stop the clock. In this case, they might typically idle for the number of `uclocks` during which the `cclocks` are stopped, as illustrated in Figure 4.5.

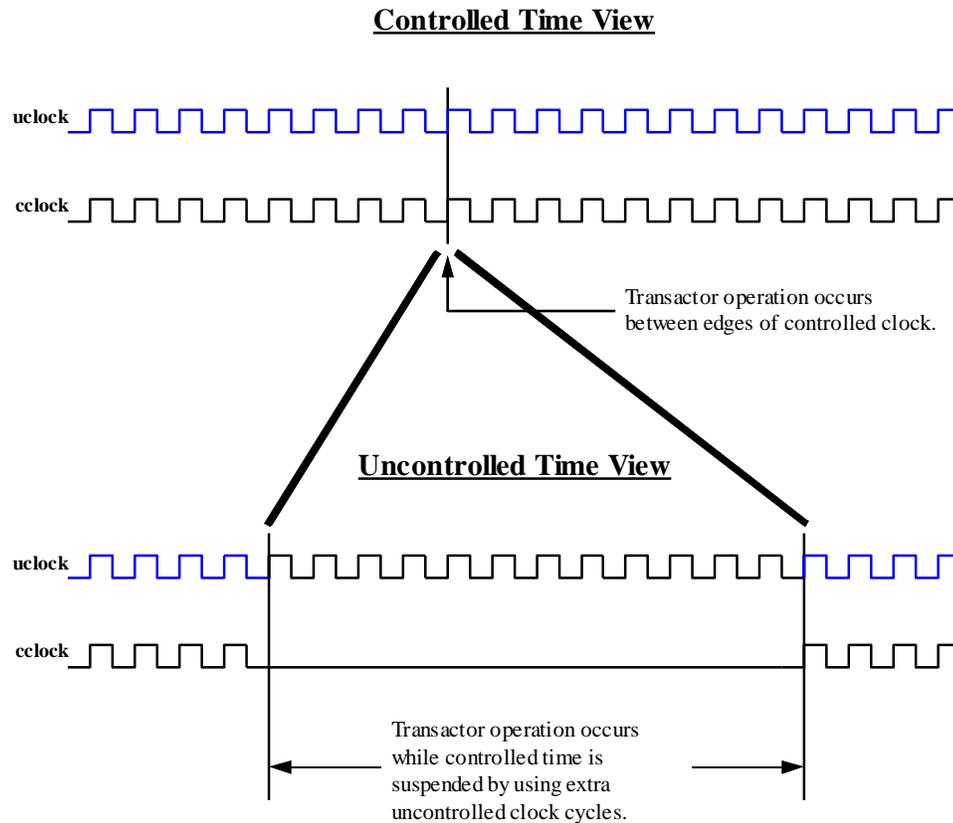


Figure 4.5 Controlled and uncontrolled time views

In the SCE-MI macro-based interface, the semantics of clock control can be described as follows.

Any transactor can instruct the SCE-MI infrastructure to stop the controlled clock and thus cause controlled time to freeze.

- All transactors are told by the SCE-MI infrastructure when the controlled clock is stopped.
- Any transactor shall function correctly if controlled time is stopped due to operations of another transactor, even if the transactor in question does not itself need to stop the clock.
- A transactor might need to stop the controlled clock when performing operations that involve decomposition or composition of transactions arriving from or going to a message channel.
- The DUT is always clocked by one or more controlled clocks which are controlled by one or more transactors.
- A transactor shall sample DUT outputs on valid controlled clock edges. The transactor can use a clock control macro to know when edges occur.
- All transactors are clocked by a free running uncontrolled clock provided by the SCE-MI hardware side infrastructure.

## 4.5 Work flow

There are four major aspects of work flow involved in constructing system verification with the SCE-MI environment:

- software model compilation
- infrastructure linkage
- hardware model elaboration

- software model construction and binding

#### 4.5.1 Software model compilation

The models to be run on the workstation are compiled using a common C/C++ compiler or they can be obtained from other sources, such as third-party vendors in the form of IP, ISS simulators, etc. The compiled models are linked with the software side of the SCE-MI infrastructure to form an executable program.

#### 4.5.2 Infrastructure linkage

*Infrastructure linkage* is the process used by in the macro-based use model that reads a user description of the hardware, namely the source or *bridge* netlist which describes the interconnect between the transactors, the DUT, and the SCE-MI interface components, and compiles that netlist into a form suitable for emulation. Part of this compile process can involve adding additional structure to the bridge netlist that properly interfaces the user-supplied netlist to the SCE-MI infrastructure implementation components. Put more simply, the infrastructure linker is responsible for providing the core of the SCE-MI interface macros on the hardware side.

As part of this process, the infrastructure linker also looks at the parameters specified on the instantiated interface macros in the user-supplied bridge netlist and uses them to properly establish the dimensions of the interface, including the:

- number of transactors
- number of input and output channels
- width of each channel
- number of clocks
- clock ratios
- clock duty cycles

Once the final netlist is created, the infrastructure linker can then compile it for the emulation platform and convert it to a form suitable to run on the emulator.

The *Infrastructure linkage* process is optional as when only the function-based and pipes-based use models are used as this step is provided natively by the interfaces for these two use models.

#### 4.5.3 Hardware model elaboration

The compiled netlist is downloaded to the emulator, elaborated, and prepared for binding to the software.

#### 4.5.4 Software model construction and binding

The software executable compiled and linked in the software compilation phase is now executed, which constructs all the software models in the workstation process image space. Once construction takes place, the software models bind themselves to the message port proxies using special calls provided in the API. Parameters passed to these calls establish a means by which specific message port proxies can *rendezvous* with its associated message port macro in the hardware. Once this binding occurs, the co-modeling session can proceed.

## 4.6 Macro-based SCE-MI interface components

The SCE-MI run-time environment consists of a set of interface components on both the *hardware side* and the *software side* of the interface, each of which provides a distinct level of functionality. Each side is introduced in this section and detailed later in this document (see Chapter 5).

#### 4.6.1 Hardware side interface components

The interface components presented by the SCE-MI *hardware side* consist of a small set of macros which provide connection points between the transactors and the SCE-MI infrastructure. These compactly defined and simple-to-use macros fully present all necessary aspects of the interface to the transactors and the DUT. These macros are simply represented as empty SystemVerilog or VHDL models with clearly defined port and parameter interfaces. This is analogous to a software API specification that defines function prototypes of the API calls without showing their implementations.

Briefly stated, the four macros present the following interfaces to the transactors and DUT:

- message input port interface
- message output port interface
- controlled clock and controlled reset generator interface
- uncontrolled clock, uncontrolled reset, and clock control logic interface

#### 4.6.2 Software side interface components

The interface presented by SCE-MI infrastructure to the software side consists of a set of C++ objects and methods which provide the following functionality:

- version discovery
- parameter access
- initialization and shutdown
- message input and output port proxy binding and callback registration
- rendezvous operations with the hardware side
- infrastructure service loop polling function
- message input send function
- message output receive callback dispatching
- message input-ready callback dispatching
- error handling

In addition to the C++ object oriented interface, a set of C API functions is also provided for the benefit of pure C applications.

## 4.7 Function-based interface

### 4.7.1 Overview

This section describes some of the attributes of the function-based interface based on SystemVerilog DPI. These attributes are listed follows:

- The DPI is API-less
- Define a function in one language, call it from the other - universal programming concept, easy to learn
- The function call is the transaction
- Function calls provide mid-level of abstraction - not too high, not too low
- SystemVerilog DPI is already a standard

These attributes are discussed in more detail in the following sections.

### 4.7.2 The DPI is API-less

The SystemVerilog DPI was designed to provide an easy to use inter-language communication mechanism based on simple function calls. The idea is, rather than providing an API, simply allow the user to create his or her own API by defining functions in one language and calling them from the other.

### 4.7.3 Define a function in one language, call it from the other

Functions are defined and called in their native languages. This requires very little training for a user to understand. The “golden principle” of DPI is, on each side, the calls look and behave the same as native function calls for that language.

The following figures depict this simple principle both for the C-to-HDL and HDL-to-C directions:

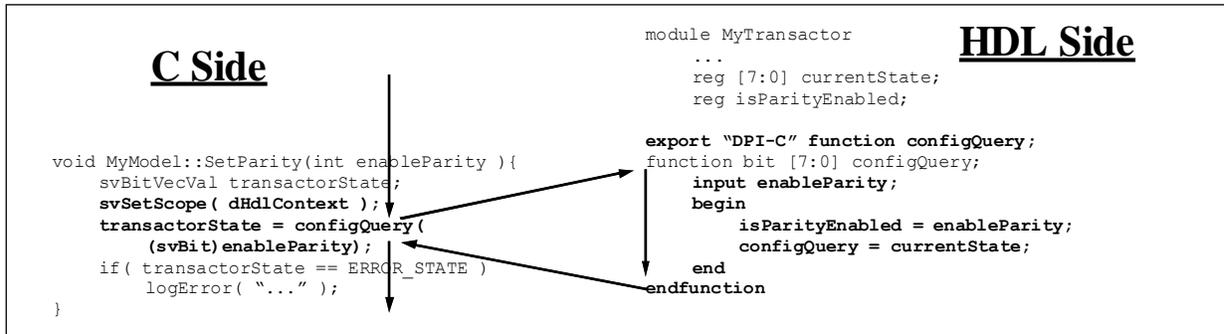


Figure 4.6 Define a function in HDL, call it from C

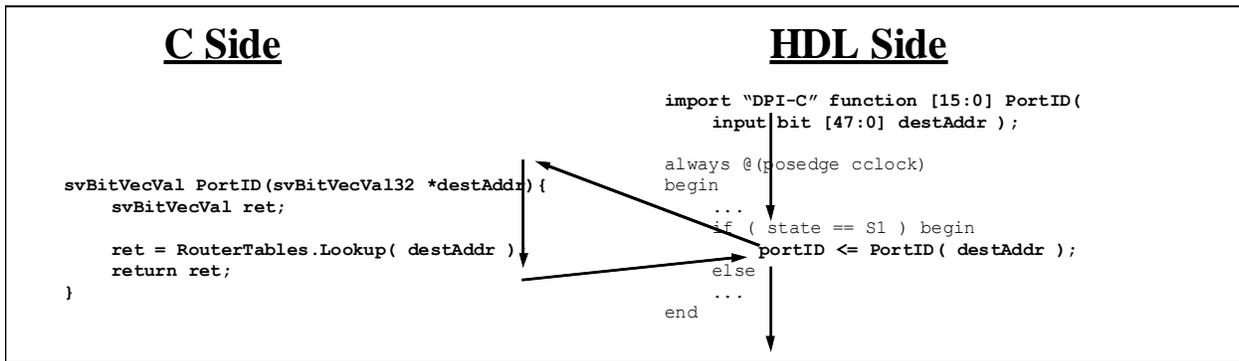


Figure 4.7 Define a function in C, call it from HDL

The DPI SystemVerilog layer is described in detail in the SystemVerilog LRM (see Reference [3]).

The DPI SystemVerilog layer is designed to allow imported and exported function calls to be used with identical semantics to plain SystemVerilog functions. This means that argument passing and calling conventions remain identical.

In addition, all scoping considerations remain identical. For example the calling scope of a call to any SystemVerilog function call is the scope where the function is defined and not the caller site. In the case of an imported function, special function declaration syntax serves as a place holder for where the function would actually be defined if it were a plain SystemVerilog function. That placeholder represents a declaration of the actual function definition itself which is on the C side. As with plain SystemVerilog functions, the calling scope of this function is considered to be the scope of this import declaration rather than the caller site. *This becomes important when understanding calling scope for purposes of context handling as described in section 4.7.8.*

Here is an example of an imported function declaration in SystemVerilog:

```
// Declare an imported context sensitive C function with cname "MyCFunc"
import "DPI-C" context MyCFunc = function integer MapID(int portID);
```

This declaration is telling the SystemVerilog side that, “there’s a C function called `MyCFunc()` that can be called directly from SystemVerilog as the aliased SystemVerilog name `MapID()`”.

When the SystemVerilog code makes a call to `MapID()`, this results in the C function `MyCFunc()` being called. This is very useful when resolving incompatibilities in legal names between the C language and the SystemVerilog language. For example a SystemVerilog name could be an escaped identifier that is illegal in C. This can be easily fixed by choosing a legal C name and using aliasing in the import declaration.

For exported functions, the entire function body is defined in some module scope in SystemVerilog. Special additional declaration syntax is used to declare that function is allowed to be called from the C side, for example,

```
export "DPI-C" SetParityGetConfig = function configQuery;
function int configQuery;
    input bit enableParity;
    begin
        isParityEnabled = enableParity;
        configQuery = currentState;
    end
endfunction
```

In this example the variables `isParityEnabled` and `currentState` are defined in the same module scope as the function `configQuery()` and can thus be accessed freely by the function itself.

Like imported functions, C-name aliasing works for exported functions as well. In this case, when the C side calls the function `SetParityGetConfig()` the HDL function `configQuery()` will actually get called.

#### 4.7.4 The function call is the transaction

- The function call itself is the transaction and the function call arguments (input plus output) comprise the transaction's named data members - this avoids having to use slices and bit fields of a single big vector
- Function calls can have individually named input args, or output args, or both, or neither
- In SystemVerilog a wide range of data types can be used for function arguments but for SCE-MI 2 it is restricted to a useful subset consisting of bit vectors and integers

#### 4.7.5 Function calls provide mid level of abstraction - not to high, not to low

Function calls provide a good "lowest common denominator" mid level abstraction for transporting simple transactions across language domains.

Low enough abstraction for:

- synthesizeability
- use with legacy ANSI C.

High enough abstraction for:

- building user defined simple transactor applications
- building simulation-oriented, reusable verification IP
- providing a good base upon which users can build higher abstraction interfaces (such as TLM, SystemVerilog mailboxes)
- optimal implementation for targeted verification engine (simulation or acceleration)
- providing a deterministic programming interface
- avoiding the need to be aware of uncontrolled time and clock control in HDL.

#### 4.7.6 SystemVerilog DPI is already a standard

SCE-MI 2 is leveraging the fact that the SystemVerilog DPI:

- Has been a standard since 2007. It went through a thorough development process and has been proven in several arenas. It has also had significant industry exposure (see bibliography [B4], [B5] and [B6]).
- Clearly defined syntax of function declarations in SystemVerilog.
- Clearly defined argument data type mappings between SystemVerilog and C (see section 5.6.1.3).
- Clearly and rigidly defined semantics of calling functions in terms of argument passing conventions, time consumption of the function (0-time vs. time consuming - see section 5.6.2.2), and other details.
- Is explicitly designed to be binary compatible across implementation for any given C host platform and compiler tool (such as GNU gcc-3.2).

### 4.7.7 DPI datatypes

The philosophy that was used in the development of the DPI was to make the type mappings between C and SystemVerilog as common sense and simple as possible and to minimize the requirements for special helper functions that are used to convert from one type to the other. In other words, define a type in SystemVerilog, define the same type in C the way your common sense would tell you to, and the two will match.

Basic C scalar types, structures, and unpacked arrays of such types, will map directly to equivalent SystemVerilog types almost literally. There are some caveats to this however:

- SystemVerilog integer types are specified to be of fixed size regardless of the inherent data width of a given machine architecture. For example the SystemVerilog types `byte`, `shortint`, `int`, and `longint` specifically have widths of 8, 16, 32, and 64 bits respectively.
- Unfortunately, by contrast in ANSI C, integer types do not have widths that are as cast in stone as the corresponding types in SystemVerilog (see Wikipedia reference for ANSI C data types). What this means is that even though there is a fixed correspondence between fixed sized SystemVerilog integer types and non-fixed sized ANSI C integer types, it will be up to the user to understand which bits of data passed between SystemVerilog and C are significant and where padding/masking is implied/required. Despite this caveat, the use of scalar types to pass small data values by value back and forth between the language domains is extremely useful and thus supported to the extent possible in the SCE-MI 2 standard (see proposed type support for SCE-MI 2 below).

Additional complexities arise with bit vector (packed array) types and open arrays. For these, great care was taken to make their mappings as easy to use and intuitive as possible.

### 4.7.8 Context handling

Context handing in DPI is the term used to refer to the mapping of an imported function call to an instance of user C data (such as an object pointer) that was previously associated with the SystemVerilog caller module instance.

This is useful for maintaining an association between, for example, a pointer to a SystemC proxy module and the instance of the SystemVerilog transactor associated with it. Because an imported function call is just a C function, by definition, it has no context as would say a method or member function of a C++ class. Context handling in SystemVerilog DPI is very similar to context handling for *receive callbacks* in the SCE-MI macro-based interface (see 5.4.7.1). In the case of SCE-MI macro-based interface, the Context data member of the `ScemiMessageOutPortBinding` struct is used to pass a user model context to the receive callback function that can be associated with an instance of an output message port, as shown in Figure 4.8.

```

// Define the function and model class on the C++ side:
class MyCModel {
private:
    int locallyMapped (int portID); // Does something interesting..

    sc_event notifyPortIdRequest;
    int portID;

public:
    // Constructor
    MyCModel (const char * instancePath) {
        SceMiMessageOutPortBinding outBinding =
            = { this, myCFunc, NULL }

        SceMiMessageOutPortProxy outPort = outPort->BindMessageOutPort (
            instancePath, "SceMiMessageOutPort", outBinding );
    }

    friend int myCFunc ( int portID );
};

// Implementations of receive callback function SCE-MI
void MyCFunc ( void *context, const SceMiMessageData *data ) {

    MyCModel* me = (MyCModel*)context;

    me->portID = data->Get(0);
    me->notifyPortIdRequest.notify();
}

```

Figure 4.8 Context handling in SCE-MI Macro-based interface

In SCE-MI 2 function-based interface, context binding is similarly established at initialization time by storing a context pointer with a SystemVerilog module instance scope and later retrieving it via `svGetScope()` and `svGetUserData()`.

Figure 4.9 shows an example of context handling in SCE-MI 2 function-based interface:

```

SV Side:
    // Declare an imported context sensitive C function with name "MyCFunc"
    import "DPI-C" context MyCFunc = function integer MapID ( int portID );

C Side:
    // Define the function and model class on the C++ side:
    class MyCModel {
    private:
        int locallyMapped ( int portID ); // Does something interesting..

    public:
        // Constructor
        MyCModel ( const char* instancePath ) {
            svScope scope = svGetScopeFromName ( instancePath );
            // Associate "this" with the corresponding SystemVerilog scope
            // for fast retrieval during runtime.
            svPutUserData ( svScope, (void*) MyCFunc, this );
        }

        Friend int MyCFunc ( int portID );
    };

    // Implementation of imported context function callable in SV
    Int MyCFunc ( int portID ) {
        // Retrieve SV instance scope (i.e. this function's context).
        svScope = svGetScope();

        // Retrieve and make use of user data stored in SV scope.
        MyCModel* me = (MyCModel*)svPutUserData ( svScope, (void*) MyCFunc );
        Return me->locallyMapped ( portID );
    }

```

Figure 4.9 Context handling in SCE-MI 2 function-based interface

In this example notice that because functions can have both input and output arguments, the return argument can be sent directly out of the function return argument. In the SCE-MI macro-based interface, the receive callback must notify another thread to send the mapped `portID`.

#### 4.7.9 SV-Connect – Using DPI with SystemVerilog HVL

This section will discuss usage of a DPI function-based interface that can be used to connect SystemVerilog HVL testbenches to SCE-MI compliant DPI-based HDL-side transactors. This interfacing mechanism is referred to as *SV-Connect* and its architecture is depicted in Figure 4.10.

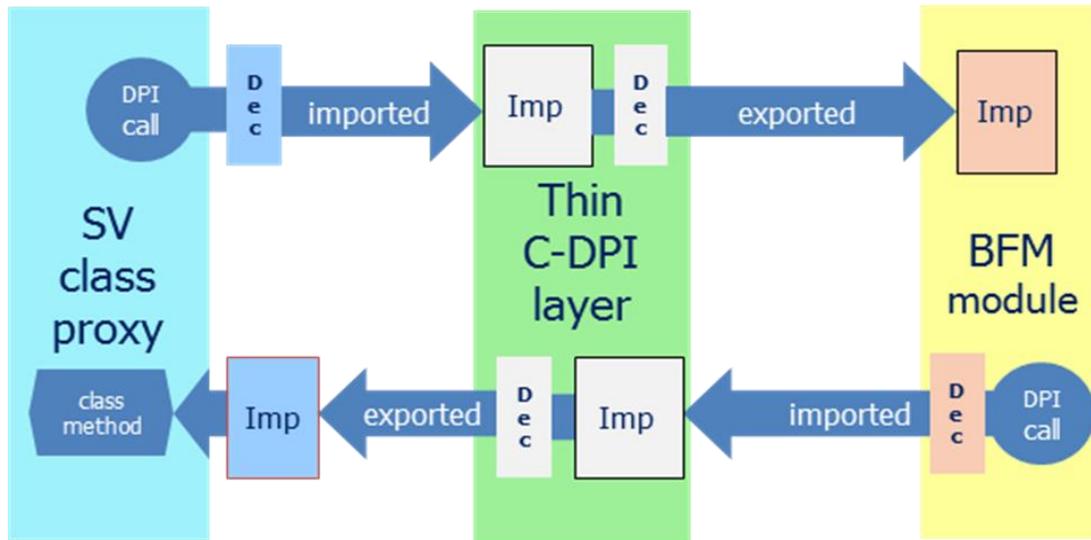


Figure 4.10 SV-Connect architecture

#### 4.7.9.1 HDL-side commonality between C and SystemVerilog testbenches

In the SV-Connect architecture, there are no differences between the SCE-MI standard for the HDL-side of the DPI and for usage with SystemVerilog HVL testbenches. Effectively, a SCE-MI compliant HDL-side (everything in the rightmost block of Figure 4.10) is 100% portable between C testbenches and SystemVerilog HVL testbenches.

The remaining discussion in this section applies in its entirety to SystemVerilog HVL testbenches.

#### 4.7.9.2 The implied C layer

DPI is inherently a cross-language function call-based interface between C and SystemVerilog. When using DPI to interface SystemVerilog HVL to SystemVerilog HDL, there must be a C layer in between as depicted in the middle block of Figure 4.10. The implementation details of the C layer are left to EDA vendors as long as the SystemVerilog HVL-side and SystemVerilog HDL-side are compliant with the SystemVerilog DPI standard.

DPI imported function calls in SystemVerilog call C function implementations. DPI exported function calls in C call SystemVerilog implementations. Therefore, the function calling chain for communication in either direction is:

- SystemVerilog (HDL or HVL) calls an imported function.
- The imported function implementation is in the C layer. It calls an exported function.
- The exported function implementation is in SystemVerilog (HVL or HDL).

The functionality of the C layer is limited to passing data through the function calling chain and some minimal scope handling as discussed in **5.6.3.4 Binding and scope handling**.

##### 4.7.9.2.1 Automatic generation of the implied C layer

It is the intent of this standard to allow and encourage EDA vendors to produce C layer implementations that are transparent to the user and which can be automatically generated. It is possible to derive all information needed to generate a C layer by utilizing the SystemVerilog standard VPI interface to examine HVL-side import DPI-C function declarations and HVL-side export DPI-C function definitions matching the default prefix or a specified prefix (see section **5.6.3.1.1 Naming convention**), and exact function name and argument profile information.

Providers of IP models shall be able to auto-generate separately linkable C layer packages for each of their models or model families.

An example of a C layer that can be automatically generated as described above is shown in section **4.7.9.4 Example of thin C code “middleman” layer.**

#### 4.7.9.3 Complete examples of SV-Connect based function calls

The following examples demonstrate a complete SV-Connect based calling flow for supporting DPI calls in both directions:

- “Inbound” SV HVL-to-HDL function calls
- “Outbound” HDL-to-SV HVL function calls

##### 4.7.9.3.1 Example of Inbound (HVL-to-HDL) function call

```
package HvlToolsPkg;

import svdpi::*; // Import standardized SV-Connect package name `svdpi`

// Inbound HVL-to-HDL DPI function
import "DPI-C" context function void svcServiceIngressTransaction(
    input chandle scope,
    input bit [31:0] count,
    input bit [63:0] data,
    input bit [31:0] status );

class PipelineIngressProxy extends uvm_driver #( MyType );
    `uvm_component_utils( PipelineIngressProxy )

    local string hdlPath; // Hierarchical path to this proxy's associated HDL-side
                          // transactor module
    local chandle hdlScope; // The scope of this proxy object's HDL-side
                          // transactor module

    function void build_phase(uvm_phase phase);
        if(!uvm_config_db #(string)::get(this, "", "HDL_PATH", hdlPath))
            uvm_report_fatal("build_phase", "Failed to get string HDL path");

        hdlScope = svGetScopeFromName( hdlPath);
    endfunction

    task run_phase( uvm_phase phase);
        MyType request;

        forever begin
            seq_item_port.get( request );

            svcServiceIngressTransaction( hdlScope, request.Count, request.Data,
                request.Status);

            // Wait for confirmation of receipt from egress proxy ...
            @( dTransactionServicedEvent );

        end
    endtask
endclass
endpackage
```

In this example the `build_phase()` function does a one-time setup of the DPI scope which is stored in the `chandle hdlScope` variable after calling the import “DPI-C” DPI utility function, `svGetScopeFromName()`. This scope handle is passed as the required first argument to any inbound DPI function such as the `svcServiceIngressTransaction()` HVL-to-HDL function shown above.

The *paired* HDL-side export function that gets called is simply a SCEMI compliant export “DPI-C” function with exactly the same name and argument profile as the HVL-side import “DPI-C” function above except without the prefix and without the first `chandle scope` argument as is shown in the following example,

```

export "DPI-C" function ServiceIngressTransaction;
function void ServiceIngressTransaction(
    input bit [31:0] countIn,
    input bit [63:0] dataIn,
    input bit [31:0] statusIn );
    holdingCount    = countIn;
    receivedCount   = countIn;
    receivedData    = dataIn;
    receivedStatus  = statusIn;
    ->serviceCallDetected;
endfunction

```

#### 4.7.9.3.2 **Example of outbound (HDL-to-HVL) function call**

When the HDL-side makes an outbound call to its paired HVL proxy, an imported function call is made into the thin C layer which, in turn calls an exported function implemented in a package in HVL.

In the thin C layer `svGetScope()` is called to retrieve the HDL-side caller scope. This scope is passed into the exported function call and is used on the HVL side to look up the proxy object paired with the HDL-side caller.

The lookup is done using a static associative array containing proxy handles keyed by the caller's scope.

During some initialization phase, prior to the onset of any DPI function calls, each proxy object handle is added to the associative array, keyed by the scope of its paired HDL-side module. Here is an example to demonstrate this concept. This class is assumed to be contained in the same package `HvlToolsPkg` shown in the previous section.

```

class PipelineEgressProxy extends uvm_monitor;
  `uvm_component_utils( PipelineEgressProxy )

  uvm_analysis_port #( MyType ) analysisPort;
  local MyType rsp;

  local string hdlPath;
  local chandle hdlScope;
  static PipelineEgressProxy userData[ chandle ];

  function new(string nm, uvm_component p);
    super.new ( nm, p );
    analysisPort = new( "analysisPort", this );
    rsp = new;
  endfunction

  function void build_phase(uvm_phase phase);
    if(!uvm_config_db #(string)::get(this, "", "HDL_PATH", hdlPath))
      uvm_report_fatal("build_phase", "Failed to get string HDL path");

    hdlScope = svGetScopeFromName( hdlPath);
    svcSetScope_HvlToolsPkg();
    userData[ hdlScope ] = this;
  endfunction

  // Callback from HDL: uart has received character
  function void serviceEgress;
    input bit [31:0] count;
    input bit [63:0] dataOut;
    input longint unsigned statusOut;

    rsp.Count = count;
    rsp.Data = dataOut;
    rsp.Status = statusOut;
    analysisPort.write(rsp);
  endfunction
endclass

export "DPI-C" function svcUploadEgressTransaction;
function void svcUploadEgressTransaction;
  input chandle scope;
  input bit [31:0] count;
  input bit [63:0] dataOut;
  input bit [31:0] statusOut;
  automatic PipelineEgressProxy me = PipelineEgressProxy::userData[ scope ];

  uvm_report_info( "export DPI-C function", $psprintf(
    "svcUploadEgressTransaction() called from scope '%s'",
    svGetNameFromScope(scope) ) );

  me.serviceEgress( count, dataOut, statusOut);
endfunction

```

Using the scope table (associative “userData” array above), outbound HVL-side exported DPI function implementations can now look up the handle of the proxy to which they are associated using the HDL scope passed in from the C layer as illustrated in the export “DPI-C” function `svcUploadEgressTransaction()` above.

Things to note in the above example:

- The associative array “userData” is a non-local static member of the proxy class. So, there is only one such array for all class objects and it is accessible from outside the class.
- Scopes are of type `chandle` in SystemVerilog HVL
- The SystemVerilog keyword “this” is a proxy handle to the object being constructed

- Any DPI function implementation must be outside of a SystemVerilog class but local to the package scope shared by that class.
- The `input chandle scope` argument must be the first argument passed into an SV-Connect outbound exported DPI function implementation. It is the `chandle` for the caller's HDL-side transactor module instance scope passed in from the thin C layer.
- A handle to the proxy paired with the caller HDL BFM is looked up in the `userData` associative array using the scope as a key
- A proxy class method is then called, passing along function arguments omitting the scope, which has served its purpose.

The *paired* HDL-side import function that gets called is simply a SCEMI compliant import “DPI-C” function with the exactly the same name and argument profile as the HVL-side export “DPI-C” function above except without the prefix and without the first `input chandle scope` argument as is shown in the following example,

```
import "DPI-C" context function void UploadEgressTransaction(
    input bit [31:0] countOut,
    input bit [63:0] dataOut,
    input bit [31:0] statusOut );

always @(posedge Clock) begin
    if( Reset != 1 && TokenOut != 0 )
        // Send egress transaction to consumer model.
        UploadEgressTransaction(
            TokenOut[31:0],      // countOut
            TokenOut[95:32],    // dataOut
            TokenOut[127:96] ); // statusOut
end
```

#### 4.7.9.4 Example of thin C code “middleman” layer

For the inbound and outbound examples shown above the following listing shows the thin C code layer that couples the paired HVL and HDL functions. As mentioned in section **4.7.9.2.1 Automatic generation of the implied C layer**, vendors are encouraged to automatically generate this C layer.

```

// SV-Connect Thin C Layer File

#include "svdpi.h"
#include <stdio.h>

extern "C" {

//-----
// SV-Connect C layer for package HvlToolsPkg
//-----

static svScope HvlToolsPkg_scope;

void svcSetScope_HvlToolsPkg() {
    HvlToolsPkg_scope = svGetScope();
}

// Inbound function
void svcServiceIngressTransaction(
    void *ARG0, svBitVecVal *ARG1, svBitVecVal *ARG2, svBitVecVal *ARG3) {
    svSetScope( (svScope)ARG0 );
    ServiceIngressTransaction( ARG1, ARG2, ARG3);
}

// Outbound function
void UploadEgressTransaction( svBitVecVal * ARG0, svBitVecVal * ARG1, svBitVecVal *
ARG2) {
    svScope scope = svGetScope();
    svSetScope(HvlToolsPkg_scope);
    svcUploadEgressTransaction( (void *)scope, ARG0, ARG1, ARG2);
}

```

The inbound import “DPI-C” function `svcServiceIngressTransaction()` relays calls from the HVL side to the actual export “DPI-C” function `ServiceIngressTransaction()` on the HDL side.

Conversely the outbound import “DPI-C” function `UploadEgressTransaction()` relays calls from the HDL side to the actual export “DPI-C” function `svcUploadEgressTransaction()` on the HVL side.

Note: the statically stored `svScope HvlToolsPkg_scope` which is set up from the HVL side once at init time by calling the function `svcSetScope_HvlToolsPkg()`. This variable is referenced by the outbound function `UploadEgressTransaction()` to set the HVL-side package scope.

## 4.8 Pipe-based interface

### 4.8.1 Overview

As currently defined, the DPI standard handles strict reactive semantics for function calls. There are no extensions for variable length messaging and streaming data.

The SCE-MI 2 supports constructs called *transaction pipes* which can be implemented as *built-in* library functions. Transaction pipes can potentially be implemented with reference source code that uses basic DPI functions, or can be implemented in an optimized implementation specific manner.

A transaction pipe is a construct that is accessed via function calls that provides a means for streaming transactions to and from the HDL side.

Two operation modes are defined for transaction pipes that enable different data visibility semantics. They are called deferred visibility and immediate visibility modes.

Generally speaking, in *deferred visibility* mode, there is a precisely defined lag between when elements are written to pipe by the producer side and when they are actually visible and available for consumption by the

consumer side. In this mode a pipe may absorb one or more elements when non-blocking send calls are made but the consumer will not see these elements until the pipe either fills or is flushed.

Whereas, in *immediate visibility* mode, any elements written by the producer side are immediately visible by the consumer side that next time it gains execution control for any reason.

Transaction pipes are as easy to use as simple function calls, yet have semantics that can be thought of as a hybrid between UNIX sockets, UNIX file streams and UNIX named pipes.

- Like UNIX sockets, transaction pipes provide a facility for sending one-way message passing through simple function calls. Transaction pipes are composed of send and receive calls that look very much like write and read calls to UNIX sockets (but are much easier to create and bind endpoints).
- Like UNIX file streams, items written to the pipe can be buffered by the infrastructure which allows for more optimal streaming throughput. Pipes leverage the fact that in some cases round trip latency issues can be avoided by using pipelining, and therefore more effective throughput of streamed transactions can be realized.
- Like UNIX file streams, transaction pipes can be flushed. Flushing a transaction pipe has the effect of guaranteeing to the writer of the transaction that the reader of the transaction at the other end has consumed it. This is useful for providing synchronization points in streams.
- Like UNIX named pipes, each transaction pipe is uniquely identified with a name. In the case of transaction pipes, that name is the hierarchical path to the interface instance of the HDL endpoint of the pipe.

Transaction pipes are unidirectional meaning that in any given pipe, the transactions only flow in one direction. The data sent by the producer is guaranteed to be received by the consumer in the same order when the consumer asks for the data (by calling a function). However, the data is not guaranteed to be available to the consumer immediately after it was sent depending on how buffering is used. That is, if the pipe has some amount of buffering, that could continue to be filled by a producer thread as long as there is room. The consumer would not see it until control is yielded to the consumer. This could happen if either the pipe filled while being written to, thus suspending the producer, or via a flush operation initiated by the producer. See 5.8.4.3 for more information on flush operations.

Transaction pipes that pass one-way transactions from the C side to the HDL side are called *input pipes*. Pipes that pass transactions from the HDL side to the C side are called *output pipes*.

Unlike normal DPI calls, in which one end calls and the other end is called, models on both ends of a transaction pipe call into the pipe, with one end calling the send function and the other calling the receive function.

## 4.8.2 Streaming pipes vs. TLM FIFOs

A blocking interface is well suited to true streaming applications and follows the easy use model of UNIX streams as discussed previously.

It is useful to compare and contrast the semantics of streaming pipes to those of FIFOs - particularly the FIFOs that follow the semantics of TLM FIFOs described in the Accellera Systems Initiative's SystemC-TLM standard. A possible reason for confusion when discussing issues like user vs. implementation specified buffer depth, its effect on determinism, etc. is due to people thinking of a FIFO model rather than a pipe model.

Both pipes and FIFOs are deterministic and have similar functions in term of providing buffered data throughput capability. But they have different basic semantics.

Here is a small listing that tries to compare and contrast the semantics of FIFOs vs. pipes:

FIFOs

- Follow classical Accellera Systems Initiative's SystemC-TLM like FIFO model
- User specified fixed sized buffer depth
- Automatic synchronization
- Support blocking and non-blocking put/get operations
- "Under the hood" optimizations possible - batching

- No notion of a flush

#### Pipes

- Follows Unix stream model (future/past/present semantics)
- Implementation specified buffer depth
- User controlled synchronization
- Makes concurrency optimization more straightforward
- Support only blocking operations (for determinism)
- "Under the hood" optimizations possible - batching, concurrency
- More naturally supports data shaping, vlm, eom, flushing

One could argue that we may wish to entertain the notion of a "SCE-MI\_FIFO" reference library to augment the "SCE-MI\_PIPE" reference library currently proposed and thus provide two alternative DPI extension libraries that are part of the SCE-MI 2 proposal that address different sets of user needs.

But it is useful to make the clear distinction between FIFOs and pipes and, for now, at least converge on the semantics of proposed pipes and making sure they address the original requirements of variable length messaging.

Pipes are intended for streaming, batching, variable length messages, and potentially can be used even for more exotic purposes if the modeling subset allows it. Given that pipes can be implemented at the application layer, the choice between using pipes and DPI is one of convenience in many cases. However, since an implementation can choose to provide an optimized version of the pipes, this would be a factor as well in the choice to use them.

In order to facilitate this FIFO model, the following chapter proposes TLM compatible, thread-neutral transaction FIFO interface.

### 4.8.3 Reference vs. optimized implementations of transaction pipes

The HDL-side API can be implemented as a built-in library, but it must allow the user to use the API with a syntax that is exactly compatible with the SystemVerilog interface declarations as described above.

On the C-side, the transaction pipes API might be used to build a higher level C++ object oriented interfaces to pipes that may provide a more user friendly object oriented interface to basic pipes.

The C-side transaction pipes API could also conceivably be used to build alternative native HVL object-oriented interfaces such as Accellera Systems Initiative's SystemC-TLM interfaces.

While not required, it is possible to implement pipes as a reference model of library functions of source code built over basic DPI function calls. As such they can be made to run on any DPI compliant software simulator.

It is an absolute requirement however that DPI based implementations and built-in implementations of pipes must have identical deterministic behavior and must strictly adhere to the semantics defined in this specification.

#### 4.8.3.1 Implementation of pipes in multi-threaded C environments

Pipes blocking access functions does not have a thread-neutral API that can be used to aid in adapting the implementations of user friendly (but thread-aware) blocking pipe functions to arbitrary threading systems on the C side.

To satisfy this requirement the pipes interface was designed to address the following needs:

- A user-friendly, but thread-aware pipe interface (which the blocking pipe functions already provide).
- A lower level implementation-friendly, but thread-neutral pipe interface - essentially implementation API and callback functions to facilitate easy creation of adapters that allow implementation of the user-friendly API in selected C threading environments.

Transaction pipes provide a solution to the second requirement. It provides:

- Easy-to-use blocking pipe access API at the user level.

- Thread neutral API and callback functions that implementations can choose to use to create adapter layers that implement pipes over a selected threading system.
- Easy to demonstrate reference implementation of the blocking pipe calls that uses the pipe API and callback functions in their implementation. The example below shows a working reference model of such an implementation for the HDL side.

In summary, the non-blocking calling and callback functions for pipes described in section 5.8.2 provide thread-neutral functions that can be used by any implementation to implement the thread-aware blocking pipe access calls.

#### 4.8.4 Deadlock avoidance

SCE-MI pipe implementations are in no way expected to guard against application induced deadlocks.

Note: An example of an application induced deadlock is the case where an HDL-side process is blocking while waiting for data on an empty input pipe, a yield to the C-side producer thread occurs, but the C-side never feeds more data into the pipe. In this case, this specific HDL-side process would never advance (deadlock). Another example is in the output direction where an HDL-side process is blocking while trying to feed data to a full output pipe, a yield to the C-side consumer thread occurs, but the C-side never drains data from the pipe. In this case, this specific HDL-side process would never advance (deadlock). In both of these cases it is up to the application to be properly designed to avoid such deadlocks.

#### 4.8.5 Input pipe

Figure 4.11 shows an example of the use of an *input pipe* on both the C and HDL sides:

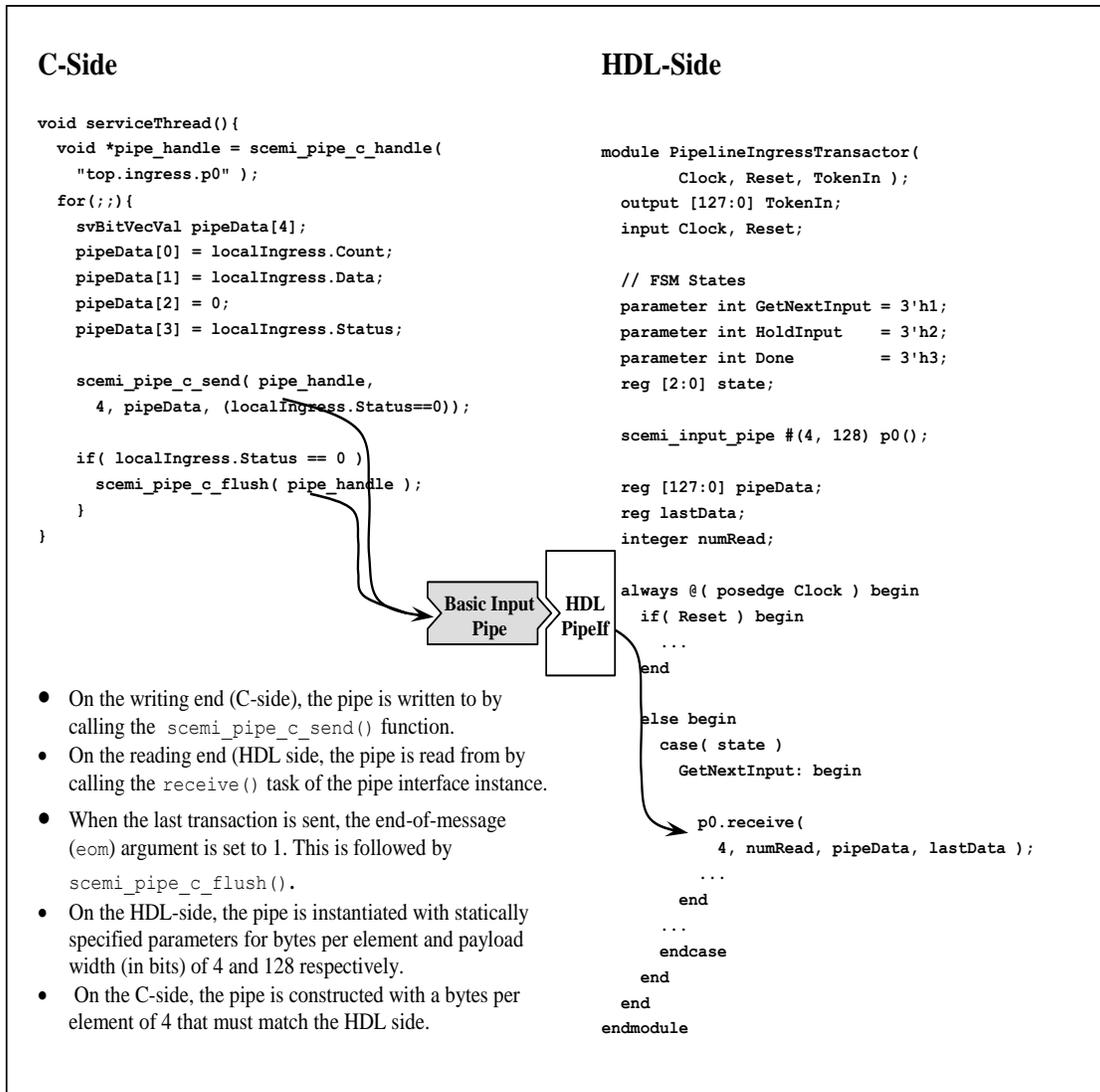


Figure 4.11 Example of Input Pipe

### 4.8.6 Output pipe

Figure 4.12 shows an example of the use of an *output pipe* on both the C and HDL sides:

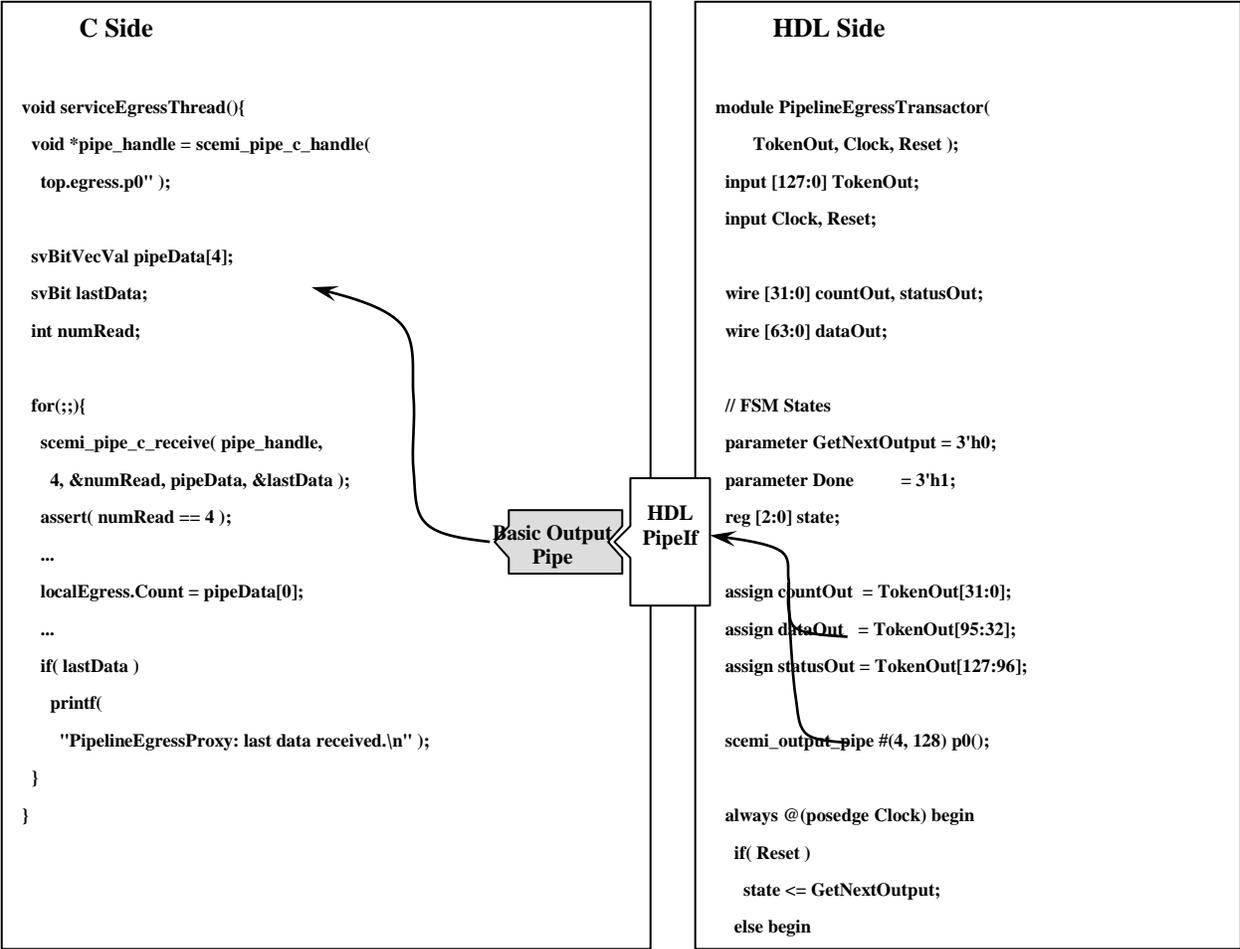


Figure 4.12 Example of output pipe

**4.8.7 Implementation defined buffer depth for pipes, user defined buffer depth for FIFOs**

For a typical streaming use model, a user may instantiate a pipe with the `BYTES_PER_ELEMENT` and/or `PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS` specified but the `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` left alone, for example,

```

scemi_input_pipe #(
.BYTES_PER_ELEMENT(32),
.PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS(16)) p0( ... );

```

By not specifying depth, pipes used in streaming applications can benefit from pipe depths that are optimal for a given implementation. This will allow streaming of transactions in an optimal manner for each implementation. This use model may typically choose to use a flush/eom mechanism with the pipe as well to define proper synchronization points between producer and consumer.

For a typical FIFO oriented use model (such as TLM FIFOs), a user will explicitly want to specify the pipe to be a specific depth which will facilitate consistent behavior in terms of how long threads continue to write to or read from pipes before yielding.

Such a use model may typically choose not to use a flush mechanism.

**4.8.8 Variable length messaging**

In addition to providing a means of highly optimizing streaming performance, transaction pipes can be a natural mechanism to implement *variable length messaging*.

Consider the case of the transmission of an Ethernet frame transaction. As per the IEEE 802.3 Ethernet standard, a frame can be anywhere up to 1500 bytes (although there is some disagreement if this is data payload size or total frame size). However, in some applications, typical frames may be far smaller. This is a classic example of where a variable length transaction would be useful as it saves the overhead of transmitting a fixed width 1500 byte transaction every time regardless of actual length.

Using pipes one could implement this example as follows. Let's assume for the sake of simplicity that we are transmitting frames from the C side to the HDL side:

- The HDL side declares an input pipe with `BYTES_PER_ELEMENT` statically specified as 1 (i.e. the default value) in its transactor module scope and makes calls to it with a `num_elements = 1`.
- Using the data shaping capability, each time the C side calls the send function it sends an array of bytes with `num_elements` set to whatever the desired number of bytes is which can vary from call to call (hence variably sized messages)
- On each send call, the C side sets `eom` to 1 since it is sending all the bytes at once
- Because the receive side is only reading a byte at a time, it will not see the `eom` indication until the last byte is received.

Because pipes can, at the option of the implementer, be optimized for streaming, one can imagine that if there are several such interfaces generating traffic simultaneously (say with a multi-port Ethernet packet router) the benefit from concurrency of execution (between the multiple threads on the workstation and the emulator) within the transmission of each frame could be appreciable.

One can also envision another scenario where a sequence of several sequential frames could be sent before an actual *flush* is performed. This would support streaming of multiple sequential variable length frames before synchronization is required.

One can also consider a pure streaming data thread to be one long variable length message (or sequence of them) that lasts the entire simulation, essentially requiring no synchronizations in the interim, such as feeding the entire contents of a file as traffic for an interface with a flush only occurring at the very end.

#### 4.8.8.1 Variable length messaging features of transaction pipes

Three areas have been identified that are desirable to support with transaction pipes:

- Data shaping
- End-of-message `<eom>` marking mechanism
- Support for multiple pipe transactions in 0-time

##### 4.8.8.1.1 Data shaping

Data shaping is a concept that addresses the need for random access to variable length messages. Data shaping simply allows a transaction pipe to have a different width at one end than the other.

For example suppose a frame of 100 elements of data is desired to be sent over an input pipe 1 element at a time but the consumer of the frame wants random access to the entire variable length message of 100 elements. The consumer could read the entire 100 elements in one call. The producing end could write 1 element per call.

In this case transmission of the elements would be buffered but time would be stopped on the reading end until all 100 elements are received since, the read is blocking. Once received, any or all elements could be accessed as desired.

In this case the send end of the pipe is narrower than the receive end. One can refer to such a pipe as a *nozzle*.

Conversely suppose the producer wished to send the frame of 100 elements of data all at once but the consumer only wanted to read 1 element at a time. The producer could send all 100 elements in a single call. The producer end of the pipe could receive only one element with each read call.

In this case, transmission of the elements would be buffered but time could advance on the reading end between each element read since each is a separate call that can be separated by `@(posedge clock)` statements for example.

In this case the send end of the pipe is wider than the receive end. One can refer to such a pipe as a *funnel*.

#### 4.8.8.1.2 **End-of-message <eom> marking mechanism**

Using the `eom` the user can mark the end of a message or “last data”.

This flag can be queried at the receive end to know if it is the end of the message. The infrastructure does nothing with this flag (unless autoflush is enabled – see section 5.8.4.3.3), it is simply passed as received. However, if data shaping is involved, the infrastructure does not pass the `eom` flag until the last element is read by the consumer, regardless of the shape of the data.

So for example, in the case of a funnel, if the sender sends 100 elements all at once and sets the `eom` flag to 1 and the receiver only reads one element at a time, it will not see the `eom` set to 1 until the last element.

Conversely, in the case of a nozzle, if the sender sends 1 element at a time and only sets the `eom` flag to 1 on the last one, and the receiver reads 100 elements at a time, the receiver will see the `eom` flag set to 1 on the first read of the message.

Special considerations must be made if a producer endpoint of a nozzle does a data send operation with a smaller `num_elements` than that requested by the subsequent data receive operation at the consumer endpoint of that nozzle. If an `eom` is specified on that send operation, in order to satisfy its request the consumer will see a return of `num_elements_valid` that is smaller than its requested `num_elements`. This is because, in order to satisfy the producer's `eom` condition, the consumer's blocking receive call must have satisfactorily returned from its read operation even if that read operation was asking for a larger number of elements than had been sent as of the time of the `eom`.

So, referring back to the nozzle example above where the consumer reads 100 elements, if the producer only sends 75 elements before setting `eom`, the request to read 100 elements will return with the `eom` bit set but with a `num_elements_valid` of only 75.

#### 4.8.8.1.3 **Support for multiple pipe transactions in 0-time**

Operation of pipes is identical whether successive access operations (sends or receives) are done in 0-time or over user clock time, i.e. 1 access per clock. It is strictly a function of modeling subset as to whether 0-time operations are supported or not. But the pipe interface itself does nothing to preclude transmission of multiple transactions in 0-time without requiring the need for user awareness of uncontrolled time. This is true whether the transactions are variable or fixed length messages transmitted through a pipe or whether they are just simple DPI.

### 4.8.9 **Clocked pipes**

Digital systems include many interfaces to a DUT and each interface may have different clocking requirements. A C testbench modeled on the SCE-MI paradigms may provide streaming data to one interface of a DUT based on some reactive signal coming from another interface on the DUT. The reactive signal may come in the form of a DPI import call and the streaming data may go in as data pushed into an input SCE-MI pipe. This will lead to a modeling situation of the kind where the model surrounding the SCE-MI pipe instance will have to be prepared for timing behavior that is not aligned to a clock known to that interface.

This behavior is not confined to the outputs of the pipe call only. Any register assignments right after the call to the pipe now have this ambiguous timing behavior depending on when the pipe call wakes up. Any reads of values after the pipe call have the ambiguous behavior that they might be reading some values too early at some times but not at other times. The behavior and the problems are similar to poorly written RTL code where not all signals are assigned in a non-blocking manner. The problems range from un-expected modeling behavior to mismatches between simulation and synthesis behavior.

When using SCE-MI pipes, special considerations need to be made to support RTL clocked semantics.

Often times, the pipe's blocking interface may need to be used in the context of an RTL style of finite state machine (FSM). In this case there can be a slight conflict between the statements which block on the RTL clock vs. the statements which block on the pipe. The pipe itself may unblock at some time other than the relevant edge of the RTL clock, in which case the RTL clocked semantic structure of the state machine is invalidated.

One solution to this problem is to use only the 0-time non-blocking API to the pipes as depicted in the following example:

```

scemi_input_pipe #(...) input_pipe();

always @(posedge clock)begin

    if( input_pipe.try_receive(0,1,data,eom) == 0 ) begin
        while( input_pipe.try_receive(0,1,data,eom) == 0 ) @(posedge clock);
    end

    <process received data>

end

```

However, this solution is not always practical when using the pipe with data shaping (see section 4.8.8.1.1) or other such complex use models that make calls with multiple elements at a time and involve managing the `byte_offset` argument of the pipe.

As such, the SCE-MI standard supports the notion of a clocked pipe in addition to the unclocked pipe described previously. In the clocked pipe usage, the pipe itself has an optional port to which a clock can be connected. The following example shows how the example above can be rewritten using a clocked input pipe:

```

scemi_input_pipe #(..., .IS_CLOCKED_INTF=1) input_pipe( clock );

always @(posedge clock)begin

    input_pipe.receive(0,1,data,eom);

    <process received data>

end

```

This simpler blocking interface will achieve the same function as the original example that used the non-blocking call in a clocked loop. The receive will unblock synchronously to edges of the clock attached to the pipe rather than at any arbitrary time and will thus be timing consistent with the surrounding RTL compliant `always` block. The blocking interface is also easier to use with more complex data shaping operations because all housekeeping associated with data shaping management is kept internal to the call.

See section 5.8.5.4.1 for details about how to parameterize and use a clocked pipe.

## 4.9 Backward compatibility and coexistence of function- and pipes-based applications with macro-based applications

The SCE-MI 2 standard enables new use models that allows higher modeling abstraction and improved modeling ease-of-use over the original macro-based standard. This improvement is embodied mainly in the DPI specification and the capabilities of transaction pipes.

At the same time however, one requirement of the SCE-MI 2 standard is backward compatibility with and coexistence with macro-based applications defined by the SCE-MI 1 standard. The main idea is that pure DPI applications can run in either a simulator that natively supports the SystemVerilog DPI or in a simulator or emulator platform that supports SCE-MI 2 standard (which implies that it also supports SCE-MI 1).

The following sections provide more detail on how the two interfaces can co-exist.

### 4.9.1 What does not change?

Aside from guaranteeing compatibility with legacy macro-based models, the SCE-MI 2 interface specifically does not change the following:

- The SCE-MI Initialization/Shutdown API
- ScMiClockPort Support for Clock Definitions

## 4.9.2 Error handling, initialization, and shutdown API

SCE-MI 2 function and pipe-based applications can continue to use the macro-based initialization and shutdown API functions without changes:

```
SceMi::RegisterErrorHandler()  
SceMi::RegisterInfoHandler()  
SceMi::Version()  
class SceMiParameters  
SceMi::Init()  
SceMi::Shutdown()
```

The following rules dictate the use of these macro-based calls:

- They are only required for applications that use macro models.
- They are optional for applications that use purely function or pipe models (see definitions of Macro-based vs. Function-based models in section 4.9.4).

Applications with only function or pipe models that choose not to use the error handling, initialization, and shutdown functions above will run on any simulator that supports DPI but does not necessarily support the SCE-MI macro-based initialization and shutdown API standard functions.

## 4.9.3 Requirements and limitations for mixing macro-based models with function- and pipe-based models

This section describes the formal requirement for preventing mixes of macro constructs with function and pipe constructs in the same transactor and C models.

Macro models can co-exist in an application with function and pipe models but conceptually the following requirements must generally be followed:

- Macro models would be ported as a whole and would not be allowed to intermix function (DPI) and pipe constructs with macro constructs.
- function- and pipe-based models would not be allowed to use macro constructs within the calling hierarchy. In other words, mixing of uncontrolled time interactions with controlled time interactions within the same model would not be allowed (see section 5.6.2.2).
- Legacy macro-based models and function- and pipe-based models would be allowed to co-exist in a single simulated environment.
- These models can share clocks (SceMiClockPorts), but only macro-based models are allowed to use SceMiClockControls)
- On the C side imported DPI functions cannot be called from macro callbacks.
- On the C side macro message input port ::Send() functions cannot be called from DPI imported functions.
- In multi-threaded C environments, calls to ::ServiceLoop() would be restricted to one thread that could be embedded in an implementation's infrastructure so as to hide this detail from users.
- Macro-based callbacks and function-based imported functions alike would be serviced by this same thread.
- For single threaded HVL, use of ::ServiceLoop() would not change.

The following sections present a more formal specification of how the above constraints for model and construct mixing are enforced.

## 4.9.4 Definition of macro-based vs. function- and pipe-based models

For purposes of describing requirements of model mixing, the following definitions are given.

The uses of the term model here are somewhat arbitrary but convenient. A model is some level of hierarchy and all its descendants.

A Macro-based HDL model is defined as a hierarchy with the following properties:

- At least one macro-based message port or clock control macro (but not clock port macro) is instantiated at the highest level of the hierarchy within the model.
- More macro-based message ports or clock controls may be instantiated at lower sub-hierarchies of the model.

A Function or pipe-based HDL model is defined as a hierarchy with the following properties:

- At least one DPI function call or pipe-based function call is declared at the highest level of the hierarchy within the model.
- More DPI function calls or pipe-based function calls may be declared at lower sub-hierarchies of the model.

#### 4.9.5 Requirements for a function- or pipe-based model

- On the HDL side, no macro-based models as defined above can contain any function- or pipe-based call declarations or calls anywhere in their hierarchy.
- On the HDL side, no function- or pipe-based models as defined above can contain any macro-based message port or clock control macros anywhere in their hierarchy.
- On the C side, no macro-based callback functions can make direct calls to exported DPI function or pipe-based function calls.
- On the C side, no imported DPI function call or pipe-based call can make calls to the macro-based service loop or to send messages on any of the macro-based input ports.

The above requirements force macros and their proxies to only exist in disjoint hierarchies from DPI and pipe-based functions.

#### 4.9.6 Subset of DPI for SCE-MI 2

SCE-MI uses a subset of DPI that is restricted in such a way as to provide a nice balance between usability, ease of adoption and implementation. The subset includes:

- Data types used with DPI functions are limited as detailed in section 5.6.1.3
- Certain restrictions on calling imported functions from exports and vice versa (see 5.6.2.3 for more details)

#### 4.9.7 Use of SCE-MI DPI subset with Verilog and VHDL

The SCE-MI standard does not support using the SCE-MI 2 DPI subset for Verilog 2001 and VHDL 1993. Verilog and VHDL users who prefer not using SystemVerilog can use the SCE-MI macro-based interface defined in section 4. SCE-MI 2 also supports mixed usage of Verilog and VHDL SCE-MI macro-based transactors with SCE-MI function and pipe-based transactors following the use model guidelines described in the Mixed Usage section 4.9.

#### 4.9.8 Support for multiple messages in 0-time

DPI places no restrictions on the number of imported function calls made in the same block of code without intervening time advancement.

One important point to make about the SCE-MI 2 function-based approach is that it does not preclude the ability to support transmission of multiple messages in 0-time either by calling the same function or by calling multiple functions in the same timestep.

This interfacing feature is fundamentally missing from SCE-MI macro-based interface where macros supporting controlled time interfacing are fed with user clocks. The only way of accomplishing this is to use some sort of over-clocking scheme in which the message clock (still a controlled clock) has a frequency that is some multiple of the main clock being used in the transactor.

For example, if I am using a message macro that is clocked by `transactor_clock` and I wish to send 3 messages between posedges of `transactor_clock`, I must define essentially a `message_clock` that is at least 3 times the frequency of `transactor_clock`. Short of this over-clocking there is no other way to fundamentally accomplish transmission of multiple messages between clocks.

With the SCE-MI 2 function-based approach, multiple messaging is possible. Take the following code example:

```
always @( posedge transactor_clock ) begin
    if( reset == 1 ) begin
        // Do the reset thing ...
    else switch ( fsm_state ) begin
        case `FSM_STATE_1: begin
            ...
            c_function1( data1, data2 );
            c_function1( data2, data3 );
            c_function2( data3, data4 );
        end
        ...
    end
    ...
end
```

In this case, there are two consecutive calls to `c_function_1()`. The first takes `data1` as the input and returns `data2` as the output. The second takes `data2` as the input and returns `data3` as the output. The third call is actually a call to a different function (which could be to different SCE-MI 1 message ports underneath).

## 4.10 Scope of calling DPI exported functions

*Assume a DPI context imported function is called and triggers (or notifies) a thread in the calling application that calls an exported function via the SCE-MI 2 C side. Such a call from a different thread is considered outside a DPI context imported function call chain as defined by the SystemVerilog LRM (see Reference [3]), and thus its result is undefined. However SCE-MI 2 allows calls from other threads to be made subject to meeting certain requirements for each of the following defined use models.*

The SystemVerilog LRM (see Reference [3]) states that the behavior of DPI utility functions that manipulate context is undefined when they are invoked by any function or task that is not part of a DPI context call chain (see H.9). SCE-MI function-based use model allows calling DPI exported functions and DPI utility functions from an application linked with the C side which is considered by the SystemVerilog LRM being “outside a DPI context imported function call chain”.

SCE-MI supports two use cases differentiated by whether the application calling DPI exported functions is linked or is not linked with the SystemVerilog simulation kernel. Each use case will describe the assumption and the constraints.

This section only applies to DPI exported functions and does not apply to DPI exported tasks.

### 4.10.1 The calling application is linked with the simulation kernel:

*This use case applies to standard languages on the C-side that are linked with a simulation kernel running on the HDL-side. The term ‘linked with’ implies that the language is either simulated directly by the simulator or is handled by the simulation kernel as a direct extension to the simulator running the HDL-side. Examples for such languages are SystemC, SystemVerilog and Specman e that are ‘tightly integrated or running natively on the SystemVerilog simulator.*

DPI exported functions can be invoked by C code called from an application linked with a simulation kernel, and outside a DPI context imported function call chain as long as the calling application is triggered (or notified) from a DPI context imported function call chain initiated by a DPI context imported function or 0-time task call defined per the SystemVerilog LRM, and executed in zero simulation time or delta simulation time from when the imported DPI context function was invoked.

The key constraints when calling exported functions from an application linked with the simulation kernel are:

- a) The context of the DPI exported function must be known before its being called.
- b) Only DPI exported functions (that do not consume time) can be called. Calling DPI exported tasks will result in undefined behavior.

- c) There is no control in which order events get processed on both the calling application and the HDL side during the zero or delta simulation time period.
- d) The imported DPI context function call initiating the DPI call chain cannot return arguments that are dependent on the exported function calls.
- e) DPI imported task calls cannot be time consuming and must return in zero simulation time or delta simulation time from when the imported DPI task was invoked regardless of whether that task calls a DPI exported function or not.

*Note that any calls to DPI exported functions during any other time not covered by the above may result in undefined behavior. These include calling DPI exported functions during HDL side compilation, by C code called by PLI, VPI, VHPI callbacks or from a SystemVerilog system task. It also includes any calls from C code executing concurrently with the SystemVerilog code running on an emulator.*

#### 4.10.2 Calling application is not linked with the simulation kernel:

*This use case applies to applications that are not linked with a simulation kernel running on the HDL-side. The term ‘not linked with’ implies that the application is linked to the C software side, but that HDL side is not aware of the linked application. Examples for such languages are C/C++ programs using Pthreads or even the Accellera Systems Initiative’s SystemC reference implementation simulator linked with SCE-MI 2 SW side.*

DPI exported functions can be invoked by C code called from an application that is not linked with a simulation kernel if the calling application is triggered (or notified) from a DPI context imported function or 0-time task call chain before the imported function returns.

The key constraints when calling exported DPI functions from an application not linked with the simulation kernel are:

- The context of the DPI exported function must be known before its being called.
- Only exported functions (that do not consume time) can be called. Calling DPI exported tasks will result in undefined behavior.
- DPI imported task calls cannot be time consuming and must return in zero simulation time or delta simulation time from when the imported DPI task was invoked regardless of whether that task calls a DPI exported function or not.

*In this case, the simulation is not aware of the calling application running on the SW side and therefore the simulation kernel doesn’t suspend its execution to let the calling application external to the simulation kernel to run and furthermore to call the DPI exported function. In other words, if the DPI imported function returned, the simulator will proceed and none of the external threads of the calling application will ever wake up.*

*However assuming that the C code is running under the control of a foreign threading package, then the imported C function can suspend itself allowing other threads of the application to run and call DPI exported functions, and then resume before returning. In this case, the call to a DPI exported function is considered as being made from a Context DPI imported function call chain given that SystemVerilog simulation kernel is not aware of any context switching that is taking place. Furthermore, it really doesn’t matter if the external calling application is a simulator that consumes time, and calls the simulator after waiting on time. Until the imported C function called from by the HDL side returns, the simulator kernel on the HDL side is not aware that the imported function was suspended and that an exported function is being called from another thread. Therefore, the imported DPI function call can return arguments that are dependent on the exported function calls and event ordering is defined, meaning that the exported function returns before the DPI imported function returns.*

#### 4.10.3 DPI function calls are deterministic

In either of the configurations mentioned in sections 4.10.1 and 4.10.2 it is the case that fundamentally determinism must be guaranteed by the implementation of SCE-MI 2 on a hardware engine, just as it is implicitly guaranteed in software simulator implementations of DPI.

This means that, for a given design, assuming there are no race conditions in that design, that not only must it be guaranteed that simulation results are identical from run to run or even from compile to compile where no design changes occur, but that those results are identical to results of running the same design on a software simulator, in terms of the timing of when SCE-MI compliant DPI calls are made.

In other words, all SCE-MI compliant imported and exported DPI calls must occur in the same time slots during the simulation of a given design whether that design is simulated on a DPI compliant software simulator or a hardware simulator.

## 4.11 Backdoor memory and register APIs

The standard provides two APIs for backdoor memory and register access. These are separate and distinct from the macro-based interface components, the function-based interface, and the pipe-based interface.

The backdoor memory API is called the *direct memory interface* (DMI). All of the API calls have `sce_mi_mem_` prefix and are detailed in section 5.9 Direct Memory Interface. This API provides a *non-intrusive* C-side interface to directly access an HDL-side memory at a single instance in simulation time. The calls allow writing or reading an arbitrarily sized block of data to or from an arbitrary memory address respectively. The data buffer is given as a C-side memory byte array pointer that can be passed to the API calls.

The register access API provides a C-API to access HDL-side registers which can include single or multi-bit registers. Like the backdoor memory API, the register access API provides a non-intrusive way of accessing HDL-side registers at any single instance in simulation time. It supports *set/get/force/release* semantics for register updates. Specifically the register access API leverages the existing, standardized register API that is currently part of the Accellera Universal Verification Methodology (UVM) standard cited in reference [B7] of Appendix H. The SCE-MI standard leverages this existing and well defined standard API for register access. See section 5.10 *Register Access Interface* for more details.

## 5. Formal Specification

This chapter defines the API calls and macros that make up the entire SCE-MI

### 5.1 General

This section contains items that relate to all aspects of the specification.

#### 5.1.1 Reserved namespaces

Prefixes beginning with the three letter sequence s, c, e, or the four letter sequence s, c, e, \_ (underscore), in any case combination, are reserved for use by this standards group.

Prefixes beginning with the five-letter sequence s, c, e, m, i, or the six-letter sequence s, c, e, \_ (underscore), m, i, in any case combination, are reserved for use by SCE-MI and SCE-MI related specifications.

#### 5.1.2 Header files

The ANSI-C and C++ API's shall be declared in a header file with the name

```
scemi.h
```

Note: the name is all lowercase, and the same for both API's. Examples of the header files are given in Appendix D and E. Where any discrepancy exists between this specification and the included header file, the specification should be the one that is used.

#### 5.1.3 Const argument types

All input arguments whose types are pointers with 'const' qualifier should be strictly honored as read-only arguments. Attempts to cast away 'constness' and alter any of the data denoted or pointed to by any of these arguments is prohibited and may lead to unpredictable results.

#### 5.1.4 Argument lifetimes

The lifetime of any input pointer argument passed from the SCE-MI infrastructure into a SCE-MI callback function (such as input ready callback or receive callback) shall be assumed by the application to be limited to the duration of the callback. Once the callback returns, the application cannot assume that such pointer arguments remain valid. So, for example it would lead to undefined behavior for an application receive callback to cache the `SceMiMessageData *` pointer and refer to it at some point in time after the callback returns.

Conversely, the lifetime of any input pointer argument passed from an application into a SCE-MI API call shall be assumed by the SCE-MI infrastructure to be limited to the duration of the API call. Once the API call returns, the infrastructure cannot assume that such pointer arguments remain valid.

#### 5.1.5 SCE-MI compliance

SCE-MI defines three interfaces, namely: macro-based, function-based and pipes-based interfaces. SCE-MI implementation providers must qualify their level of compliance if their implementation does not support all three SCE-MI interfaces.

A SCE-MI implementation that is only compliant with SCE-MI {Macro-based and/or Function-based and/or Pipes-based} interface must be stated as "compliant with SCE-MI {Macro-based and/or Function-based and/or Pipes-based} interface(s) only".

## 5.2 Macro-based hardware side interface macros

This section contains the macros that need to be implemented on the hardware side of the interface.

## 5.2.1 Dual-ready protocol

The message port macros on the hardware side use a general PCI-like dual-ready protocol, which is explained in this section. Briefly, the dual-ready handshake works as follows.

The transmitter asserts `TransmitReady` on any clock cycle when it has data and de-asserts when it does not.

The receiver asserts `ReceiveReady` on any cycle when it is ready for data and de-asserts when it is not.

In any clock cycle in which `TransmitReady` and `ReceiveReady` are both asserted, data “moves”, meaning it is taken by the receiver.

Note:

- 1) After a ready request (`TransmitReady` or `ReceiveReady`) has been asserted, it cannot be removed until a data transfer has taken place.
- 2) After `TransmitReady` has been asserted, the data must be held constant otherwise the result is undefined.

The waveforms in Figure 5.1 depict several dual-ready handshake scenarios.

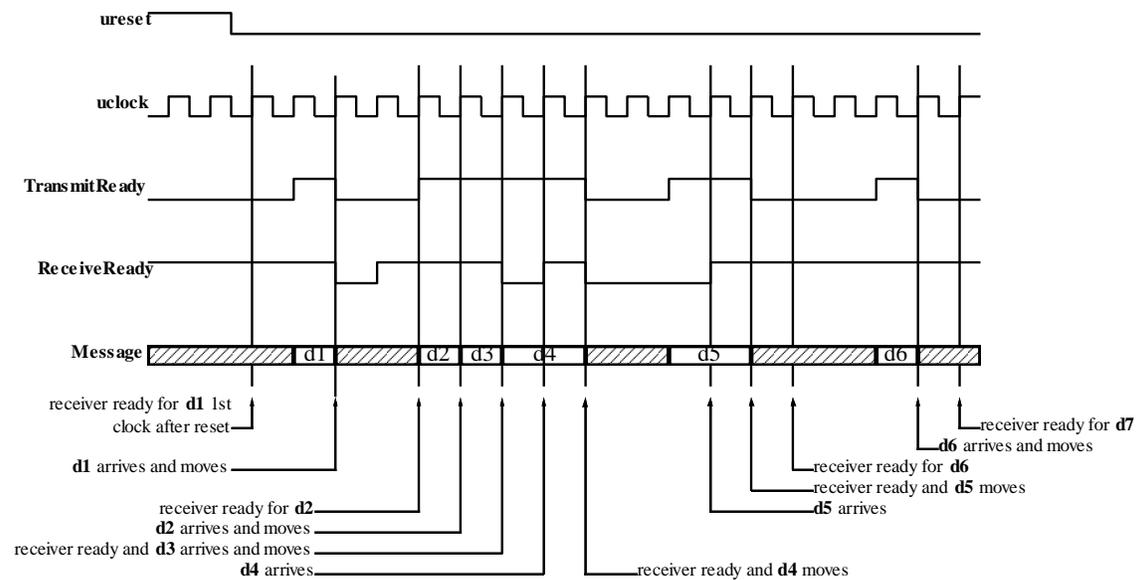


Figure 5.1 Dual-ready handshake protocol

The dual-ready protocol has the following two advantages.

- a) Signals are level-based; therefore, they are easily sampled by posedge clocked logic.
- b) If both `TransmitReady` and `ReceiveReady` stay asserted, sequences of data can still move every clock cycle; therefore, the same performance can be realized as, for example, a toggle-based protocol.

## 5.2.2 SceMiMessageInPort macro

The `SceMiMessageInPort` macro presents messages arriving from the software side of a channel to the transactor. The macro consists of two handshake signals which play a dual-ready protocol and a data bus that presents the message itself. Figure 5.2 shows the symbol for the `SceMiMessageInPort` macro, as well as SystemVerilog and VHDL source code for the empty macro wrappers.

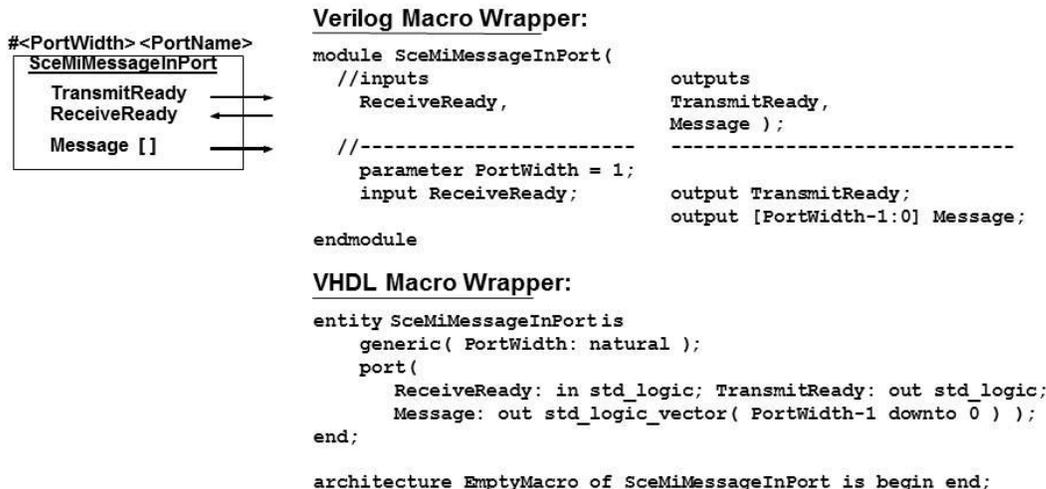


Figure 5.2 SceMiMessageInPort macro

### 5.2.2.1 Parameters and signals

#### PortWidth

The message width in bits is derived from the setting of this parameter.

#### PortName

The port's name is derived from its instance label.

#### TransmitReady

A value of one (1) on this signal sampled on any `posedge` of the `uclock` indicates the channel has message data ready for the transactor to take. If `ReceiveReady` is not asserted, the `TransmitReady` remains asserted until and during the first clock in which `ReceiveReady` finally becomes asserted. During this clock, data moves and if no more messages have arrived from the software side, the `TransmitReady` is de-asserted.

#### ReceiveReady

A value of one (1) on this signal indicates the transactor is ready to accept data from the software. By asserting this signal, the hardware indicates to the software that it has a location into which it can put any data that might arrive on the message input port. When a new message arrives, as indicated by the `TransmitReady` and `ReceiveReady` both being true, that location is consumed (see Figure 5.1). When this happens, a notification is sent to the software side that a new empty location is available and this triggers an input-ready callback to occur on the software side. (5.2.2.2 explains in detail when input-ready propagation notifications are done with respect to the timing of the `TransmitReady` and `ReceiveReady` handshakes.)

Transactors do not need to utilize `ReceiveReady` and the input-ready callback. If this is the case, the `ReceiveReady` input needs to be permanently asserted (i.e., “tied high”) and, on the software side, no input-ready callback is registered. In this case, `TransmitReady` merely acts as a strobe for each arriving message. The transactor needs to be designed to take any arriving data immediately, as it is not guaranteed to be held for subsequent `uclock` cycles.

#### Message

This vector signal constitutes the payload data of the message.

### 5.2.2.2 Input-ready propagation

The SCE-MI provides a functionality called input-ready propagation. This allows a transactor to communicate (to the software) it is ready to accept new input on a particular channel. When the transactor asserts the

ReceiveReady input, the `IsReady` callback on that port is called during the next call to the `::ServiceLoop()`.

If the software client code registers an input-ready callback when it first binds to a message input port proxy (see 5.4.3.5), the hardware side of the infrastructure shall notify the software side each time it is ready for more input. Each time it is so notified, the port proxy on the software side makes a call to the user registered input-ready callback. This mechanism is called input-ready propagation.

Input-ready propagation shall happen:

- 1) On the first rising edge of `uClock` after reset at which `ReceiveReady` is asserted, and
- 2) On the first rising edge of `uClock` after a message transferred at which `ReceiveReady` is asserted,

when an `IsReady()` callback is registered. Case 1 covers the input-ready propagation for `d1` in Figure 5.3. Case 2 covers the others (`d2`, `d3`, and `d4`).

The prototype for the input-ready callback is:

```
void (*IsReady)(void *context);
```

When this function is called, a software model can assume that a message can be sent to the message input port proxy for transmission to the message input port on the hardware side. The context argument can be a pointer to any user-defined object, presumably the software model that bound the proxy.

The application needs to follow the protocol that if the transactor is not ready to receive input, the software model shall not do a send. The software model knows not to send if it has not received an input-ready callback. The SCE-MI infrastructure does not enforce this.

Note: An application can service as many output callbacks as is desired while pending an input callback. In other words, the software model can have an outer loop which checks the status of an application-defined `OKToSend` flag on each iteration and skips the send if the flag is false.

So, suppose an application has an outer loop that repeatedly calls `::ServiceLoop()` and checks for arriving output messages and input-ready notifications. Each callback function sets a flag in the context that the outer loop uses to know if an output message has arrived and needs processing, or an input port needs more input. It is possible that, before an input-ready callback gets called, the outer loop called `::ServiceLoop()` 50 times and each call results in an output message callback and the subsequent processing of that output message. Finally, on the 51<sup>st</sup> time `::ServiceLoop()` is called, the input-ready callback is called, which sets the `OKToSend` flag in its context, and then the outer loop detects the new flag status and initiates a send on that input channel.

The handshake waveforms in Figure 5.3 are intended purely to illustrate the semantics of the dual-ready protocol. There can be a couple of reasons why these waveforms might not be realistic in an actual implementation of a `SceMiMessageInPort` macro. The waveforms shown in Figure 5.3 show what typically occurs when input-ready callbacks are enabled. It shows four possible scenarios where an input-ready notification occurs.

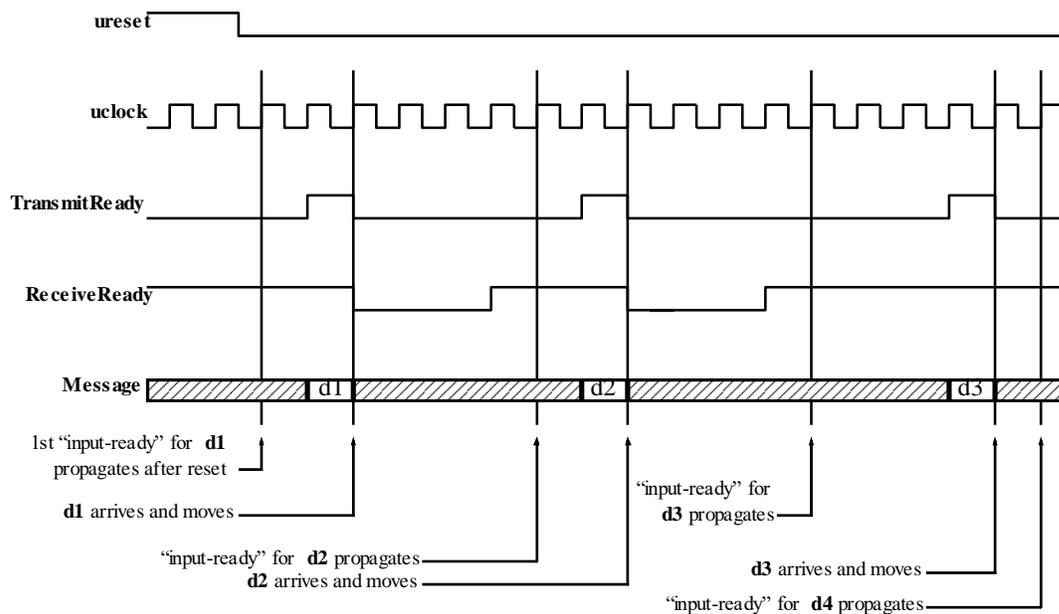


Figure 5.3 SceMiMessageInPort handshake waveforms with input-ready propagation

In the depicted scenarios, an input-ready notification is propagated to the software if:

- the `ReceiveReady` from a transactor is asserted in the first clock following a reset or
- the `ReceiveReady` from a transactor transitions from a 0 to a 1 or
- the `ReceiveReady` from a transactor remains asserted in a clock following one where a transfer occurred due to assertions on both `TransmitReady` and `ReceiveReady`.

### 5.2.3 SceMiMessageOutPort macro

The `SceMiMessageOutPort` macro sends messages to the software side from a transactor. Like the `SceMiMessageInPort` macro, it also uses a dual-ready handshake, except in this case, the transmitter is the transactor and the receiver is the SCE-MI interface. A transactor can have any number of `SceMiMessageOutPort` macro instances. Figure 5.4 shows the symbol for the `SceMiMessageOutPort` macro, as well as SystemVerilog and VHDL source code for the empty macro wrappers.

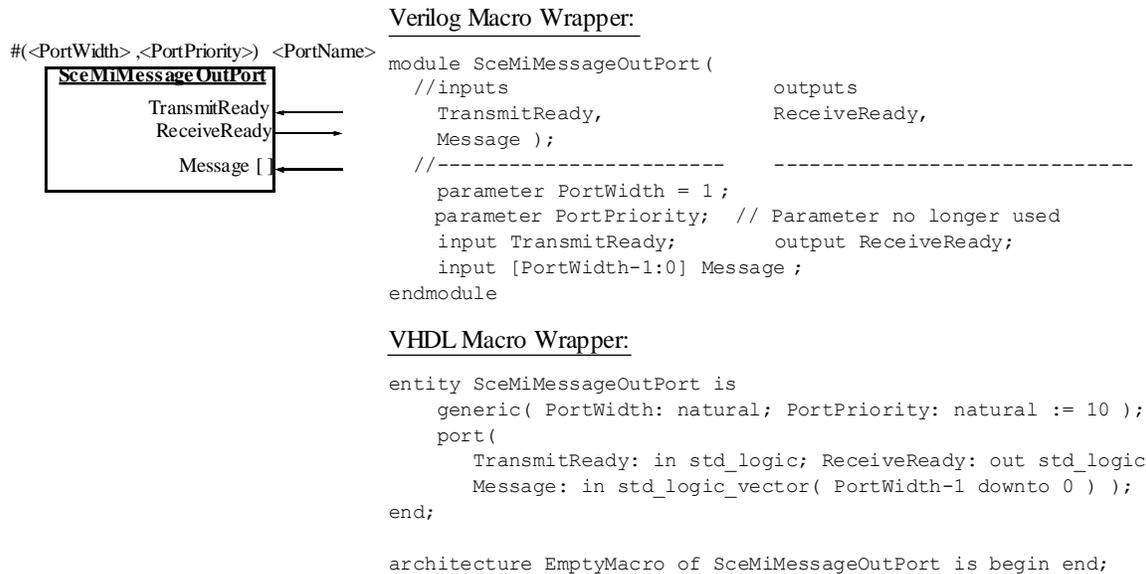


Figure 5.4 SceMiMessageOutPort macro

### 5.2.3.1 Parameters

#### PortWidth

The message width in bits is derived from the setting of this parameter.

#### PortPriority

The parameter is no longer in use.

#### PortName

The port's name is derived from its instance label.

### 5.2.3.2 Signals

#### TransmitReady

A value of one (1) on this signal indicates the transactor has message data ready for the output channel to take. If `ReceiveReady` is not asserted, the `TransmitReady` shall remain asserted until and during the first clock in which `ReceiveReady` finally becomes asserted. During this clock, data moves and if the transactor has no more messages for transmission, it de-asserts the `TransmitReady`.

#### ReceiveReady

A value of one (1) on this signal sampled on any `uclock` posedge indicates the output channel is ready to accept data from the transactor. By asserting this signal, the SCE-MI hardware side indicates to the transactor the output channel has a location where it can put any data that is destined for the software side of the channel. In any cycle during which both the `TransmitReady` and `ReceiveReady` are asserted, the transactor can assume the data moved. If, in the subsequent cycle, the `ReceiveReady` remains asserted, this means a new empty location is available which the transactor can load any time by asserting `TransmitReady` again. Meanwhile, the last message data, upon arrival to the software side, triggers a receive callback on its message output port proxy (see 5.4.7.1).

#### Message

This vector signal constitutes the payload data of the message originating from the transactor, to be sent to the software side of the channel.

### 5.2.3.3 Message ordering

The idea of ordering message delivery to software arises from the fact that there is a global time order defined in the hardware domain by the order of `cclock` edges. The delivery of messages from hardware to software respects this ordering. In particular, the delivery of messages from hardware to software is ordered using the following rules:

- a) Messages from a single message out port are delivered to software in the same time order in which they are delivered to the port.
- b) Messages from different ports which complete the dual-ready protocol on different `cclocks` are delivered to software in the time order in which the receive ready signals are asserted. In the case that two message ports accomplish the dual-ready protocol and have data move in the same `cclock` cycle, the order of delivery of the messages to the software is undefined.

### 5.2.4 SceMiClockPort macro

The `SceMiClockPort` macro supplies a controlled clock to the DUT. The `SceMiClockPort` macro is parameterized so each instance of a `SceMiClockPort` fully specifies a controlled clock of a given frequency, phase shift, and duty cycle. The `SceMiClockPort` macro also supplies a controlled reset whose duration is the specified number of cycles of the `cclock`.

Figure 5.5 shows the symbol for the `SceMiClockPort` macro, as well as SystemVerilog and VHDL source code for the empty macro wrappers.

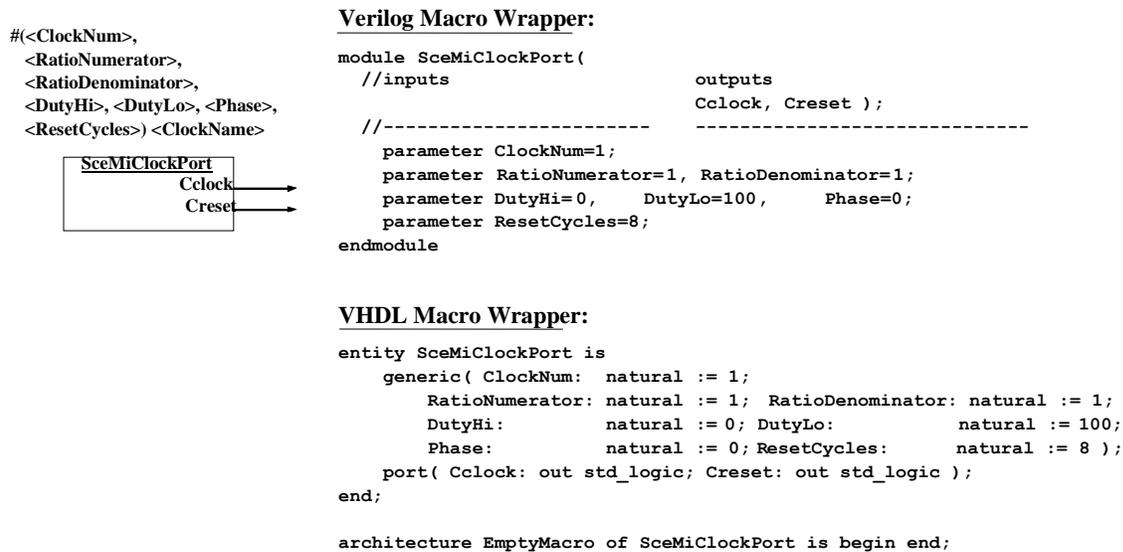


Figure 5.5 SceMiClockPort macro

All of the clock parameters have default values. In simpler systems where only one controlled clock is needed, exactly one instance of a `SceMiClockPort` can be instantiated at the top level with no parameters specified. This results in a single controlled clock with a ratio of 1/1, a don't care duty cycle (see 5.2.4.3), and a phase shift of 0. Ideally, this clock's frequency matches that of the `uclock` during cycles in which it is enabled.

The SCE-MI infrastructure always implicitly creates a controlled clock with a 1/1 ratio, which is the highest frequency controlled clock in the system. Whether or not it is visible to the user's design depends on whether a `SceMiClockPort` with a 1/1 ratio and a don't care duty cycle is explicitly declared (instantiated).

In more complex systems that require multiple clocks, a `SceMiClockPort` instance needs to be created for each required clock. The clock ratio in the instantiation parameters always specifies the frequency of the clock as a ratio relative to the fastest controlled clock in the system (whose ratio is always 1/1).

For example, if a `cclock` is defined with a ratio of 4/1 this is interpreted as, “for every 4 edges of the 1/1 `cclock` there is only 1 edge of this `cclock`”. This defines a “divide-by-four” clock.

It is sometimes necessary to establish a timebase which is associated with the fastest clock (the 1/1 clock) in the system. An implementation should provide a mechanism by which this can be done.

#### 5.2.4.1 Parameters and signals

##### **ClockNum=1**

This parameter assigns a unique number to a clock which is used to differentiate it from other `SceMiClockPort` instances. It shall be an error (by the infrastructure linker) if more than one `SceMiClockPort` instances share the same `ClockNum`. The default `ClockNum` is 1.

##### **RatioNumerator=1, RatioDenominator=1**

These parameters constitute the numerator and denominator, respectively, of this clock’s ratio. The numerator always designates the number of cycles of the fastest controlled clock that occur during the number of cycles of “this” clock specified in the denominator. For example, `RatioNumerator=5` and `RatioDenominator=2` specifies a 5/2 clock, which means for every five cycles of the 1/1 clock that occur, only two cycles of this clock occur. The default clock ratio is 1/1. For more information refer to section 5.2.4.

##### **DutyHi=0, DutyLo=100, Phase=0**

The duty cycle is expressed with arbitrary integers which are normalized to their sum, such that the sum of `DutyHi` and `DutyLo` represent the number of units for a whole cycle of the clock. For example, when `DutyHi=75` and `DutyLo=25`, the high time of the clock is 75 out of 100 units or 75% of the period. Similarly, the low time would be 25% of the period. The phase shift is expressed in the same units; if `Phase=30`, the clock is shifted by 30% of its period before the first low to high transition occurs.

The default duty cycle shown in the macro wrappers within Figure 5.6 is a don’t care duty cycle of 0/100 (see 5.2.4.3).

##### **ResetCycles=8**

This parameter specifies how many cycles of this controlled clock shall occur before the controlled reset transitions from its initial value of 1 back to 0.

##### **ClockName**

The clock port’s name is derived from its instance label.

##### **Cclock**

This is the controlled clock signal the SCE-MI infrastructure supplies to the DUT. This clock’s characteristics are derived from the parameters specified on instantiation of this macro.

##### **Creset**

This is the controlled reset signal the SCE-MI infrastructure supplies to the DUT.

#### 5.2.4.2 Deriving clock ratios from frequencies

Another way to specify clock ratios is enter them directly as frequencies, all normalized to the clock with the highest frequency. To specify ratios this way requires the following.

Make each ratio numerator equal to the highest frequency.

Use consistent units for all ratios.

Omit those units and simply state them as integers.

For example, suppose a system has 100Mhz, 25Mhz, and 10Mhz, 7.5 Mhz, and 32kHz clocks. To specify the ratios, the frequencies can be directly entered as integers, using kHz as the unit (but omitting it!):

```

100000 / 100000 - the fastest clock
100000 / 25000
100000 / 10000

100000 / 7500
100000 / 32

```

Users who like to think in frequencies rather than ratios can use this simple technique.

Note: An implementor of the SCE-MI macro-based interface may wish to provide a tool to assist in deriving clock ratios from frequencies. Such a tool could allow a user to enter clock specifications in terms of frequencies and then generate a set of equivalent ratios. In addition, this tool could be used to post process waveforms (such as .vcd files) generated by the simulation so the defined clocks appear in the waveform display to be the exact same frequencies given by the user.

### 5.2.4.3 Don't care duty cycle

The default duty cycle shown within the macro wrappers in Figure 5.6 is a don't care duty cycle. Users can specify they only care about `posedges` of the `cclock` and do not care where the `negedge` falls. This is known as a `posedge` active don't care duty cycle. In such a case, the `DutyHi` is given as a 0. The `DutyLo` can be given as an arbitrary number of units, such that the Phase offset can still be expressed as a percentage of the whole period (i.e., `DutyHi+DutyLo`).

For example, this combination:

```
DutyHi=0, DutyLo=100, Phase=30
```

means the following:

- a) I don't care about the duty cycle. Specifically, I don't care where the `negedge` of the clock falls.
- b) If the total period is expressed as 100 units (0+100), the phase should be shifted by 30 of those units. This represents a phase shift of 30%.

Another example:

```
DutyHi=3, DutyLo=1, Phase=2
```

means:

- a) I care about both intervals of the duty cycle. The duty cycle is 75%/25%.
- b) The phase shift is 50% of period (expressed as 3+1 units).

It is also possible to have a `negedge` active don't care duty cycle. In this case, the `DutyLo` parameter is given as a 0 and the `DutyHi` is given as a positive number (> 0).

For example:

```
DutyHi=1, DutyLo=0, Phase=0
```

means:

- a) I don't care about the duty cycle. Specifically, I don't care where the `posedge` of a clock falls.
- b) The phase shift is 0.

In any clock specification, it shall be an error if `Phase >= DutyHi + DutyLo`.

Note: The intent of the don't care duty cycle is to relax the requirement that each edge of a controlled clock must coincide with a rising edge of `uclock`. A controlled clock with a `posedge` active don't care duty cycle, i.e., with `DutyHi` given as 0, is not required to have its falling edge coincide with a rising edge of `uclock`. Similarly, a controlled clock with a `negedge` active don't care duty cycle, i.e., with `DutyLo` given as 0, is not required to have its rising edge coincide with a rising edge of `uclock`. Hence, the don't care duty cycle enables controlled clocks to be the same frequency of the `uclock`. Conversely, the maximum possible frequency of a non-don't care duty cycle controlled clock is 1/2 the frequency of the `uclock`. Since the implicit 1/1 controlled clock is specified to have `posedge` active don't care duty cycle, it may be as fast as `uclock`.

#### 5.2.4.4 Controlled reset semantics

The `Creset` output of the `SceMiClockPort` macro shall obey the following semantics:

`Creset` will start low (de-asserted) and transition to high one or more `uclock` cycles later. It then remains high (asserted) for at least the minimum duration specified by the `ResetCycles` parameter adorning the `SceMiClockPort` macro. This duration is expressed as a number of edges of associated `Cclock`. Following the reset duration, the `Creset` then goes low (de-asserted) and remains low for the remaining duration of the simulation. Some applications require 2-edged resets at the beginning of a simulation.

For multiple `cclocks`, the reset duration shall have a minimum length so it is guaranteed to span the `ResetCycles` parameter of any clock. In other words, the minimum controlled reset duration for all clocks shall be:

```
max( ResetCycles for cclock1, ResetCycles for cclock2, ...)
```

Some implementations can use a reset duration that is larger than the quantity shown above to achieve proper alignment of multiple `cclocks` on the edges of the controlled reset, as described in 5.2.4.5.

During the assertion of `Creset`, `Cclock` edges shall be forced, regardless of the state of the `ReadyForCclock` inputs to the `SceMiClockControl` macros. Once the reset duration completes, the `Cclock` will be controlled by the `ReadyForCclock` inputs.

Note: The operation of controlled reset just described provides the default controlled reset behavior generated by the `SceMiClockPort` macro. If more sophisticated reset handling is required, use a specially written reset transactor in lieu of the simpler controlled resets that come from the `SceMiClockPort` instances. For example, if a software controlled reset is required, an application needs to create a reset transactor which responds to a special software originated reset command that arrives on its message input port.

#### 5.2.4.5 Multiple `cclock` alignment

In general, all `cclocks` need to align on the first rising `uclock` edge following the trailing edge of the `creset`. This `uclock` edge is referred to as the point of alignment. For `cclocks` with phases of 0, this means rising edges of these clocks shall coincide with the point of alignment. For `cclocks` with phases > 0, those edges occur at some time after the point of alignment. Every `cclock` edge must occur on a `uclock` edge.

Figure 5.6 shows an assortment of `cclocks` with the `uclock` and `creset`. It also shows how those `cclocks` behave at the point of alignment.

In Figure 5.6, `cclock1`, `cclock2`, and `cclock3` have phases of 0 and, therefore, have rising edges at the point of alignment. `cclock4` has the same duty cycle as `cclock2`, but a phase shift of 50%. Therefore, its rising edge occurs two `uclocks` (1/2 cycle) after the point of alignment. Its starting value at the point of alignment is still 0.

`cclock5` has the same duty cycle as `cclock3`, but a phase of 50%. Again, its rising edge occurs 1/2 cycle after the point of alignment. But notice its starting value at the point of alignment is 0. This can be alternatively thought of as an inverted phase. Anytime the phase is greater than the high duty cycle interval, the starting value at the point of alignment is a 0. In the case where the phase equals the high duty cycle, a falling edge occurs at the point of alignment.

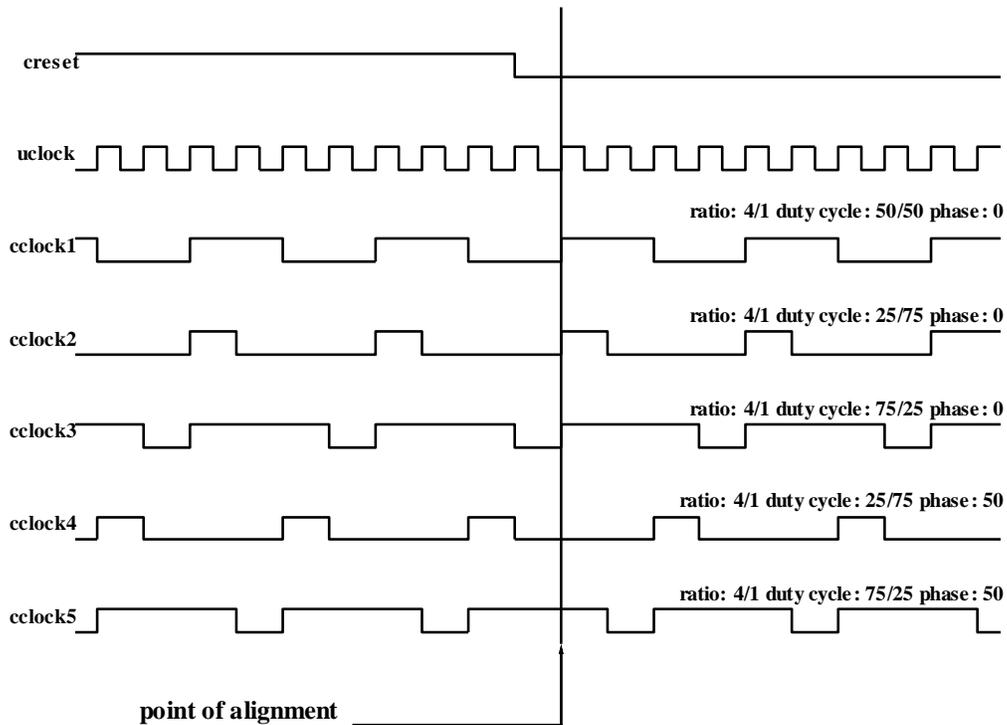
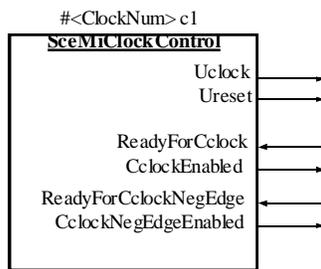


Figure 5.6 Multi-clock alignment

### 5.2.5 SceMiClockControl macro

For every `SceMiClockPort` macro instance there must be at least one counterpart `SceMiClockControl` macro instance presumably encapsulated in a transactor. The `SceMiClockControl` macro is the means by which a transactor can control a DUT's clock and by which the SCE-MI infrastructure can indicate to a transactor on which `uclock` cycles that controlled clock have edges.

Figure 5.7 shows the symbol for the `SceMiClockControl` macro as well as SystemVerilog and VHDL source code for the empty macro wrappers.



#### Verilog Macro Wrapper:

```

module SceMiClockControl (
    //inputs
    ReadyForCclock,
    ReadyForCclockNegEdge,
    //-----
    parameter ClockNum = 1;
    input ReadyForCclock;
    input ReadyForCclockNegEdge,
endmodule

    outputs
    Uclock, Ureset;
    CclockEnabled,
    CclockNegEdgeEnabled );
    output Uclock, Ureset;
    output CclockEnabled;
    output CclockNegEdgeEnabled;

```

#### VHDL Macro Wrapper:

```

entity SceMiClockControl is
    generic( ClockNum: natural := 1 );
    port(
        Uclock, Ureset: out std_logic;
        ReadyForCclock: in std_logic;
        CclockEnabled: out std_logic;
        ReadyForCclockNegEdge: in std_logic;
        CclockNegEdgeEnabled: out std_log:
    );
end;

architecture EmptyMacro of SceMiClockControl is begin end;

```

Figure 5.7 SceMiClockControl macro

For each `SceMiClockPort` defined in the system, typically one corresponding `SceMiClockControl` macro is instantiated in one or more transactors. If no clock controls are associated with a given controlled clock, it is assumed there is an implicit clock control which is always enabling that clock so the controlled clock simply runs free. In addition to providing uncontrolled clocks and resets, this macro also provides handshakes that provide explicit control of both edges of the generated `cclock`.

#### 5.2.5.1 Parameters

##### **ClockNum=1**

This is the only parameter given to the `SceMiClockControl` macro. This parameter is used to associate a `SceMiClockControl` instance with its counterpart `SceMiClockPort` instance defined at the top level. The default `ClockNum` is 1.

There shall be exactly one instance of `SceMiClockPort` associated with each instance of `SceMiClockControl` in the system. But there can be one or more instances of `SceMiClockControl` for each instance of `SceMiClockPort`. A `SceMiClockControl` instance identifies its associated `SceMiClockPort` by properly specifying a `ClockNum` parameter matching that of its associated `SceMiClockPort`.

#### 5.2.5.2 Signals

##### **Uclock**

This is the uncontrolled clock signal generated by the SCE-MI infrastructure.

##### **Ureset**

This is the uncontrolled reset generated by the SCE-MI infrastructure. This signal is high at the beginning of simulated time and transitions to a low an arbitrary (implementation-dependent) number of `uclocks` later. It can be used to reset the transactor.

The uncontrolled reset shall have a duration spanning that of the longest controlled reset (`Creset` output from each `SceMiClockPort`; see 5.2.4.4) as measured in `uclock`s. This guarantees all DUTs and transactors properly wake up in an initialized state the first `uclock` following expiration of the last controlled reset.

### **ReadyForCclock**

This input to the macro indicates to the SCE-MI infrastructure that a transactor is willing to allow its associated DUT clock to advance. One of the most useful applications of this feature is to perform complex algorithmic operations on the data content of a transaction before presenting it to the DUT.

If this input to one of the `SceMiClockControl` instances associated with a given controlled clock is de-asserted, the next `posedge` of that `cclock` will be disabled. In reacting to a `ReadyForCclock` of a slower clock, the infrastructure must not prematurely disable active edges of other faster clocks that occur prior to the last possible `uclock` preceding the edge to be disabled. In other words, that edge is disabled just in time so as to allow faster clock activity to proceed until the last moment possible. Once the edge is finally disabled, all active edges of all controlled clocks are also disabled. This is referred to as just in time clock control semantics.

Note: It may sometimes be desired for a transactor to stop all clocks in the system immediately. This is referred to as emergency brake clock control semantics. This can simply be done by instantiating a `SceMiClockControl` associated with the fastest clock in the system and applying normal clock control to it. See Section 5.2.4 for more information.

### **CclockEnabled**

This macro output signals the transactor, that on the next `posedge` of `uclock`, there is a `posedge` of the controlled clock. The transactor can thus sample this signal to know if a DUT clock `posedge` occurs. It can also use this signal as a qualifier that says it is okay to sample DUT output data. Transactors shall only sample DUT outputs on valid controlled clock edges. The SCE-MI infrastructure looks at the `ReadyForCclock` inputs from all the transactors and asserts `CclockEnabled` only if they are all asserted. This means any transactor can stop all the clocks in the system by simply de-asserting `ReadyForCclock`.

For a `negedge` active don't care duty cycle (see 5.2.4.3), since the user does not care about the `posedge`, the `CclockEnabled` shall always be 0.

### **ReadyForCclockNegEdge**

Similarly, for `negedge` control, if this input to one of the `SceMiClockControl` instances that are associated with a given controlled clock is de-asserted, the next `negedge` of that clock will be disabled. In reacting to a `ReadyForCclockNegEdge` of a slower clock, the infrastructure must not prematurely disable active edges of other faster clocks that occur prior to the last possible `uclock` preceding the edge to be disabled. In other words, that edge is disabled just in time so as to allow faster clock activity to proceed until the last moment possible. Once the edge is finally disabled, all active edges of all controlled clocks are also disabled. This is referred to as just in time clock control semantics.

Note: Support for explicit `negedge` control is needed for transactors that use the `negedge` of a controlled clock as an active edge. Transactors that do not care about controlling `negedges` (such as the one shown in Figure A.1) need to tie this signal high.

### **CclockNegEdgeEnabled**

This signal works like `CclockEnabled`, except it indicates if the `negedge` of a controlled clock occurs on the next `posedge` of the `uclock`. This can be useful for transactors that control double pumped DUTs. Transactors that do not care about `negedge` control can ignore this signal.

For a `posedge` active don't care duty cycle (see 5.2.4.3), since the user does not care about the `posedge`, the `CclockNegEdgeEnabled` shall always be 0.

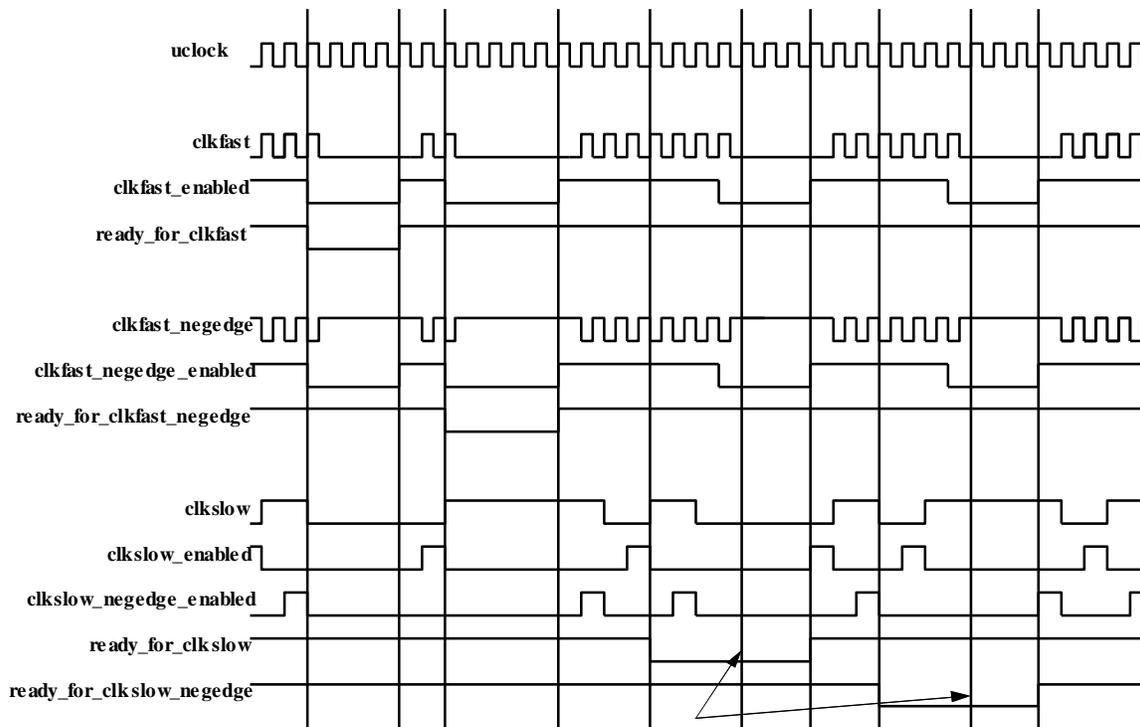


Figure 5.8 Example of Clock Control Semantics

### 5.2.5.3 Example of clock control semantics

Figure 5.8 shows an example of clock control for two fast clocks (`clkfast`, `clkfast_negedge`) that use don't care duty cycle semantics and one slow clock (`clkslow`) that uses a 50/50 duty cycle. `clkfast` uses posedge active don't care duty cycle and `clkfast_negedge` uses negedge active don't care duty cycle.

The effect of the 4 respective clock control signals `ready_for_clkfast`, `ready_for_clkfast_negedge`, `ready_for_clkslow`, and `ready_for_clkslow_negedge` can be seen.

De-assertion of `ready_for_clkfast` prevents subsequent posedges of `clkfast`, negedges of `clkfast_negedge`, and all edges of `clkslow` from occurring on subsequent posedges of `uclock`. Once re-asserted, all these edges are allowed to occur on the subsequent `uclock` posedges where relevant.

De-assertion of `ready_for_clkfast_negedge` prevents subsequent negedges of `clkfast_negedge`, posedges of `clkfast`, and all edges of `clkslow` from occurring on subsequent posedges of `uclock`. Once re-asserted, all these edges are allowed to occur on the subsequent `uclock` posedges where relevant.

De-assertion of `ready_for_clkslow` prevents subsequent posedges of `clkslow`. But notice that this happens just in time for the next scheduled posedge `clkslow`. Prior to this, edges of faster clocks or the negedge of the same clock are allowed to occur. Once the edge is finally disabled, all edges of other clocks are disabled as well. Once re-asserted, all these edges are allowed to occur on the subsequent `uclock` posedges where relevant.

De-assertion of `ready_for_clkslow_negedge` prevents subsequent negedges of `clkslow`. But notice that this happens just in time for the next scheduled negedge `clkslow`. Prior to this, edges of faster clocks or the posedge of the same clock are allowed to occur. Once the edge is finally disabled, all edges of other clocks are disabled as well. Once re-asserted, all these edges are allowed to occur on the subsequent `uclock` posedges where relevant.

Note: that all of the clock enabled signals, `clkfast_enabled`, `clkfast_negedge_enabled`, `clkslow_enabled`, and `clkslow_negedge_enabled` are shown to transition on `uclock` posedges. The implementation can also choose to

transition them on negedges. The only hard requirement is that their values can be sampled on the `uclock` posedge at which the associated controlled clock edge will occur.

## 5.2.6 SCE-MI 2 support for clock definitions

The `SceMiClockPort` continues to be supported in SCE-MI 2 and can be used to provide clocks to SCE-MI function and pipe-based models.

Although clock port macros continue to be supported, SCE-MI 2 makes no requirement that clocks must be specified using only clock ports. Alternative clock specifications are allowed such as simple behavioral clock generation blocks that are traditionally used with HDL languages. The SCE-MI 2 standard does not preclude use of such specifications in place of clock port macros.

Additionally, although there are no changes to clock ports for definitions of clocks, it is recognized that with the SCE-MI 2 function and pipes-based approach no clock control is needed as there is no explicit notion of uncontrolled time in SCE-MI 2 models.

Use of the `SceMiClockControl` macro is only needed for clock control in legacy macro-based transactor models.

## 5.3 Macro-based infrastructure linkage

This section is strictly the concern of the infrastructure implementer class of user, as defined in 4.3.3. End-users and transactor implementers can assume the operations described herein are automatically handled by the infrastructure linker.

As described in section 4.5.2, infrastructure linkage is the process which analyzes the user's bridge netlist on the hardware side and compiles it into a form suitable to run on the emulator. This may involve expanding the interface macros into infrastructure components that are added to the existing structure, as well as to generate parameter information which is used to bind the hardware side to the software side. In order to determine this information, the infrastructure linker analyzes the netlist and searches for instances of the SCE-MI hardware side macros, reads the parameter values from those instances, and generates a parameter file that can be read during software side initialization to properly bind message port proxies to the hardware side.

Typically, the infrastructure linker provides options in the form of switches and/or an input configuration file which allows a user to pass along or override implementation-specific options. A well crafted infrastructure linker, however, needs to maximize ease-of-use by transparently providing the end-user with a suitable set of default values for implementation-specific parameters, so that most, if not all, of these parameters need not be overridden.

### 5.3.1 Parameters

The following set of parameters define the minimum set that is needed for all implementations of the SCE-MI standard. Specific implementations might require additional parameters.

**Number** of transactors

The number of transactors shall be derived by counting the number of modules in the user's design that qualify as transactors. Any one of 3 conditions can qualify a module as a transactor:

1. The module has a `SceMiClockControl` macro instantiated immediately inside it, or,
2. The module has the following parameter defined within its scope:

**Verilog:**

```
parameter SceMiIsTransactor = 1;
```

**VHDL:**

```
generic( SceMiIsTransactor: boolean := true );
```

or,

3. The module has at least one SCE-MI message port instantiated immediately inside it and neither that module nor any of its enclosing parent modules has otherwise been defined as a transactor.

Nested transactors are allowed. A message port's owning transactor is defined to be the lowest module in that port's enclosing hierarchical scope that qualifies as a transactor based on the definition above.

### **Transactor name**

The transactor name shall be derived from the hierarchical path name to an instance of a module that qualifies as a transactor (as per the above definition). Naturally, if there are multiple instances of a given type of transactor, they shall be uniquely distinguished by their instance path names. The syntax used to express the path name shall be that of the bridge netlist's HDL language.

### **Number of message input or output channels**

The infrastructure linker derives the number of message input and output ports by counting instances of the `SceMiMessageInPort` and `SceMiMessageOutPort` macros.

### **Port name**

The name of each port shall be derived from the relative instance path name to that port, relative to its containing transactor module. For example, if the full path name to a message input port macro instance is (using SystemVerilog notation) `Bridge.u1.tx1.ip1` and the transactor name is `Bridge.u1.tx1`, then the port name is `ip1`. If an output port is instantiated one level down from the input port and its full path is `Bridge.u1.tx1.m1.op1`, then its port name is `m1.op1`, since it is instantiated a level down relative to the transactor root level.

The full pathname to a port can be derived by concatenating the transactor name to the port name (with a hierarchical separator inserted between).

### **Message input or output port width**

The width of a port in bits shall be derived from the `PortWidth` parameter defined in the message port macro. This width defaults to 1, but is almost always overridden to a significantly larger value at the point of instantiation.

### **Number of controlled clocks**

This number shall be derived by counting all instances of the `SceMiClockPort` macro.

### **Controlled clock name**

The name of a controlled clock is derived from the instance label (not path name) of its `SceMiClockPort` instance, necessarily instantiated at the top level of the user's bridge netlist and unique among all instances of `SceMiClockPort`.

### **Controlled clock ratio**

The clock ratio is determined from the `RatioNumerator` and `RatioDenominator` parameters of the `SceMiClockPort` macro. The `RatioNumerator` designates the number of cycles of the 1/1 controlled clock that occur during the number of cycles of "this" clock specified in `RatioDenominator`. See 5.2.4 for more details about the clock ratio.

### **Controlled clock duty cycle and phase**

The duty cycle is determined from the `DutyHi`, `DutyLo`, and `Phase` parameters of the `SceMiClockPort` macro. The duty cycle is expressed as a pair of arbitrary integers: `DutyHi` and `DutyLo` interpreted as follows: if the sum of `DutyHi` and `DutyLo` represents the number of units in a period of the clock, then `DutyHi` represents the number of units of high time and `DutyLo` represents the number of units of low time. Similarly, `Phase` represents the number of units the clock is phase shifted relative to the reference 1/1 `cclock`. A user can also specify a don't care duty cycle. See 5.2.4 for more details about the duty cycle and phase.

### **Controlled reset cycles**

The duration of a controlled reset expressed in terms of `cclock` cycles is determined from the `ResetCycles` parameter of the `ClockPort` macro.

### Parameter file

The infrastructure linker needs to automatically generate a parameter file after analyzing the user-supplied netlist and determining all the parameters identified in 5.3.1. The parameter file can be read by the software side of the SCE-MI infrastructure to facilitate binding operations that occur after software model construction. Because it is automatically generated, the content and syntax of the parameter file is left to specific implementers of the SCE-MI. The content itself is not intended to be portable.

However, on the software side, the infrastructure implementer needs to provide a parameter access API that conforms to the specification in 5.4.4. This access block shall support access to a specifically named set of parameters required by the SCE-MI, as well as an optional, implementation specified set of named parameters.

All SCE-MI required parameters are read-only, because their values are automatically determined by the infrastructure linker by analyzing the user-supplied netlist. Implementation-specific parameters can be read-only or read-write as the implementation requires.

## 5.4 Macro-based software side interface - C++ API

To gain access to the hardware side of the SCE-MI, the software side shall first initialize the SCE-MI software side infrastructure and then bind to port proxies representing each message port defined on the hardware side. Part of initializing the SCE-MI involves instructing the SCE-MI to load the parameter file generated by the infrastructure linker. The SCE-MI software side can use this parameter file information to establish rendezvous with the hardware side in response to port binding calls from the user's software models. Port binding rendezvous is achieved primarily name association involving transactor names and port names.

Note: Clock names and properties identified in the parameter file are of little significance during the binding process although this information is procedurally available to applications that might need it through the parameter file API (see 5.4.4).

Access to the software side of the interface is facilitated by a number of C++ classes:

```
class SceMiEC
class SceMi
class SceMiMessageInPortProxy
class SceMiMessageOutPortProxy
class SceMiParameters
class SceMiMessageData
```

### 5.4.1 Primitive data types

In addition to C data types, such as `integer`, `unsigned`, and `const char *`, many of the arguments to the methods in the API require unsigned data types of specific width. To support these, SCE-MI implementations need to provide two primitive unsigned integral types: one of exactly 32 bits and the other exactly 64 bits in width. The following example implementation works on most current 32-bit compilers.

Example:

```
typedef unsigned int SceMiU32; //unsigned 32-bit integral type
typedef unsigned long long SceMiU64; //unsigned 64-bit integral type
```

### 5.4.2 Miscellaneous interface issues

In addition to the basic setup, teardown, and message-passing functionality, the SCE-MI provides error handling, warning handling, and memory allocation functionality. These verbatim API declarations are described here.

### 5.4.2.1 Class SceMiEC - error handling

Most of the calls in the interface take an `SceMiEC * ec` as the last argument. Because the usage of this argument is consistent for all methods, error handling semantics are explained in this section rather than documenting error handling for each method in the API.

Error handling in SCE-MI is flexible enough to either use a traditional style of error handling where an error status is returned and checked with each call or a callback based scheme where a registered error handler is called when an error occurs.

```
enum SceMiErrorType {
    SceMiOK,
    SceMiError
};

struct SceMiEC {
    const char *Culprit;
    const char *Message;
    SceMiErrorType Type;
    int Id;
};

typedef void (*SceMiErrorHandler)(void *context, SceMiEC *ec);

static void
SceMi::RegisterErrorHandler(
    SceMiErrorHandler errorHandler,
    void *context );
```

This method registers an optional error handler with the SCE-MI that is called when an error occurs.

When any SCE-MI operation encounters an error, the following procedure is used:

If the `SceMiEC *` pointer passed into the function was non-NULL, the values of the `SceMiEC` structure are filled out by the errant call with appropriate information describing the error and control is returned to the caller. This can be thought of as a traditional approach to error handling, such as done in C applications. It is up to the application code to check the error status after each call to the API and take appropriate abortive action if an error is detected.

Else if the `SceMiEC *` pointer passed to the function is NULL (or nothing is passed since the default is NULL in each API function) and an error handler was registered, that error handler is called from within the errant API call. The error handler is passed an internally allocated `SceMiEC` structure filled out with the error information. In this error handler callback approach, the user-defined code within the handler can initiate abort operations. If it is a C++ application, a catch and throw mechanism can be deployed. A C application can simply call the `abort()` or `exit()` function after printing out or logging the error information.

Else if the `SceMiEC *` pointer passed to the function is NULL and no error handler is registered, an `SceMiEC` structure is constructed and passed to a default error handler. The default error handler attempts to print a message to the console and to a log file and then calls `abort()`.

This error handling facility only supports irrecoverable errors. This means if an error is returned through the `SceMiEC` object, either via a handler or a return object, there is no point in continuing with the co-modeling session. Any calls that support returning a recoverable error status need to return that status using a separate, dedicated return argument.

Also, the Message text filled out in the error structure is meant to fully describe the nature of the error and can be logged or displayed to the console verbatim by the application error handling code. The Culprit text is the name of the errant API function and can optionally be added to the message that is displayed or logged.

Because every API call returns a success or fatal error status and the detailed nature of errors is fully described within the returned error message, the `SceMiErrorType` enum has only two values pertaining to success: (`SceMiOK`) or failure (`SceMiError`). The `SceMiEC::Type` returned from API functions to the caller can be either of these two values, depending on whether the call was a success or a failure. However the

`SceMiEC::Type` passed into an error handler shall, by definition, always have the value `SceMiError`; otherwise the error handler would not have been called. In addition, the optional `Id` field can be used to further classify different major error types or tag each distinct error message with a unique integer identifier.

#### 5.4.2.2 Class `SceMiIC` - informational status and warning handling (info handling)

The SCE-MI also provides a means of conveying warnings and informational status messages to the application. Like error handling, info handling is done with callback functions and a special structure that is used to convey the warning information.

```
enum SceMiInfoType {
    SceMiInfo,
    SceMiWarning,
    SceMiNonFatalError
};

struct SceMiIC {
    const char *Originator;
    const char *Message;
    SceMiInfoType Type;
    int Id;
};

typedef void (*SceMiInfoHandler)(void *context, SceMiIC *ic);

static void
SceMi::RegisterInfoHandler(
    SceMiInfoHandler infoHandler,
    void *context );
```

This method registers an optional info handler with the SCE-MI that is called when a warning or informational status message occurs. This method must only be used for message reporting or logging purposes and must not abort the simulation (unless there is an application error). Only `SceMiEC` error handlers are reserved for that purpose.

When any SCE-MI operation encounters a warning or wishes to issue an informational message, the following procedure is used:

If an info handler was registered, it is called from within the API call that wants to issue the warning. The info handler is passed an internally allocated `SceMiIC` structure filled out with the warning information. In this info handler callback approach, the user-defined code within the handler can convey the warning to the user in a manner that is appropriate for that application. For example, it can be displayed to the console, logged to a file, or both.

Else if no info handler is registered, a `SceMiIC` structure is constructed and passed to a default, implementation-defined error handler. The default error handler can attempt to print a message to the console and/or to a log file in an implementation-specific format.

The Message text filled out in the error structure is meant to fully describe the nature of the info message and can be logged or displayed to the console verbatim by the application's warning and info handling code. The Originator text is the name of the API function that detected the message and can optionally be added to the message that is displayed or logged. The `SceMiInfoType` is an extra piece of information which indicates if the message is a warning or just some informational status.

An additional category, called `SceMiNonFatalError`, can be used to log all error conditions leading up to a fatal error. The final fatal error message shall always be logged using a `SceMiEC` structure and `SceMiErrorHandler` function so an abort sequence is properly handled (see 5.4.2.1). In addition, the info message can optionally be tagged with a unique identifying integer specified in the `Id` field.

#### 5.4.2.3 Memory allocation semantics

The following rules apply to SCE-MI memory allocation semantics.

Anything constructed by the user is the user's responsibility to delete.

Anything constructed by the API is the API's responsibility to delete.

Thus any object, such as `SceMiMessageData`, that is created by the application using that object's constructor, shall be deleted by the application when it is no longer in use. Some objects, such as `SceMiMessage[In/Out]PortProxy` objects, are constructed by the API and then handed over to the application as pointers. Those objects shall not be deleted by the application. Rather, they are deleted when the entire interface is shut down during the call to `SceMi::ShutDown()`.

Similarly, non-NULL `SceMiEC` structures that are passed to functions are assumed to be allocated and deleted by the application. If a NULL `SceMiEC` pointer is passed to a function and an error occurs, the API allocates the structure to pass to the error handler and, therefore, is responsible for freeing it.

### 5.4.3 Class `SceMi` - SCE-MI software side interface

This is the singleton object that represents the software side of the SCE-MI infrastructure itself. Global interface operations are performed using methods of this class.

#### 5.4.3.1 Version discovery

```
static int
SceMi::Version(
    const char *versionString );
```

This method allows an application to make queries about the version prior to initializing the SCE-MI that gives it its best chance of specifying a version to which it is compatible. A series of calls can be made to this function until a compatible version is found. With each call, the application can pass version numbers corresponding to those it knows and the SCE-MI can respond with a version handle that is compatible with the queried version. This handle can then be passed onto the initialization call described in 5.4.3.2.

If the given version string is not compatible with the version of the SCE-MI used as the interface, a -1 is returned. At this point, the application has the option of aborting with a fatal error or attempting other versions it might also know how to use.

This process is sometimes referred to as mutual discovery.

#### **versionString**

This argument is of the form "`<majorNum>.<minorNum>.<PatchNum>`" and can be obtained by the application code from the header file of a particular SCE-MI installation.

The following macros are defined

```
#define SCEMI_MAJOR_VERSION 2
#define SCEMI_MINOR_VERSION 1
#define SCEMI_PATCH_VERSION 0

#define SCEMI_VERSION_STRING "2.1.0"
```

Note: the version mapping shown above is for example purposes only and should always be set to match the actual version of the document that the implementation adheres to.

#### 5.4.3.2 Initialization

```
static SceMi *
SceMi::Init(
    int version,
    SceMiParameters *parameters,
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL );
```

This call is the constructor of the SCE-MI interface. It gives access to all the other global methods of the interface.

The return argument is a pointer to an object of class `SceMi` on which all other methods can be called.

### **version**

This input argument is the version number returned by the `::Version()` method described in 5.4.3.1. An error results if the version number is not compatible with the SCE-MI infrastructure being accessed.

### **parameters**

This input argument is a pointer to the parameter block object (`class SceMiParameters`) initialized from the parameter file generated by the infrastructure linker. See 5.4.4 for a description of how this object is obtained.

#### **5.4.3.3 SceMi Object Pointer Access**

```
static SceMi *  
SceMi::Pointer(  
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL );
```

This accessor returns a pointer to the `SceMi` object constructed in a previous call to `SceMi::Init`. The return argument is a pointer to an object of class `SceMi` on which all other methods can be called.

If the `SceMi::Init` method has not yet been called, `SceMi::Pointer` will return `NULL`.

#### **5.4.3.4 Shutdown**

```
static void  
SceMi::Shutdown(  
    SceMi *sceMi,  
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL );
```

This is the destructor of the SCE-MI infrastructure object which shall be called when connection to the interface needs to be terminated. This call is the means by which graceful decoupling of the hardware side and the software side is achieved. Termination (`Close()`) callbacks registered by the application are also called during the shutdown process.

#### **5.4.3.5 Message input port proxy binding**

```
SceMiMessageInPortProxy *  
SceMi::BindMessageInPort(  
    const char *transactorName,  
    const char *portName,  
    const SceMiMessageInPortBinding *binding = NULL,  
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL );
```

This call searches the list of input ports learned from the parameter file, which is generated during infrastructure linkage, for one whose names match the `transactorName` and `portName` arguments. If one is found, an object of class `SceMiMessageInPortProxy` is constructed to serve as the proxy interface to that port and the pointer to the constructed object is returned to the caller to serve all future accesses to that port. It shall be an error if no match is found.

The implementation shall copy the contents of the object pointed to by the `binding` argument, to an internal implementation specific location.

Note: The application is free to de-allocate and/or modify the binding object at any time after calling message input port proxy binding. Since the binding object is copied, the binding itself will not change as a result of this.

### **transactorName, portName**

These arguments uniquely identify a specific message input port in a specific transactor on the hardware side to which the caller wishes to bind. These names need to be the path names (described in 5.3.1) expressed in the hardware side bridge's netlist HDL language syntax.

### **binding**

The binding argument is a pointer to an object, defined as follows:

```

struct SceMiMessageInPortBinding {
    void *Context;
    void (*IsReady)(void *context);
    void (*Close)(void *context);
};

```

whose data members are used for the following:

### Context

The application is free to use this pointer for any purposes it wishes. Neither class `SceMi` nor class `SceMiMessageInPortProxy` interpret this pointer, other than to store it and pass it when calling either the `IsReady()` or `Close()` callbacks.

### IsReady()

This is the function pointer for the callback used whenever an input-ready notification has been received from the hardware side. This call signals that it is okay to send a new message to the input port. If this pointer is given as a `NULL`, the SCE-MI assumes this port does not need to deploy input-ready notification on this particular channel. See 5.2.2.2 for a detailed description of the input-ready callback.

### Close()

This is a termination callback function pointer. It is called during destruction of the SCE-MI. This pointer can also be optionally specified as `NULL`.

If the binding argument is given as a `NULL`, the SCE-MI assumes that each of the `Context`, `IsReady()`, and `Close()` data members all have `NULL` values.

Note: This call

```

inProxy = scemi->BindMessageInPort("Transactor","Port");

```

is equivalent to this code

```

SceMiMessageInPortBinding inBinding;

inBinding.Context = NULL;
inBinding.IsReady = NULL;
inBinding.Close = NULL;

inProxy = scemi->BindMessageInPort("Transactor", "Port",&inBinding);

```

### 5.4.3.6 Message output port proxy binding

```

SceMiMessageOutPortProxy *
SceMi::BindMessageOutPort(
    const char *transactorName,
    const char *portName,
    const SceMiMessageOutPortBinding *binding,
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL );

```

This call searches the list of output ports learned from the parameter file, which was generated during infrastructure linkage, for one whose names match the `transactorName` and `portName` argument. If one is found, an object of class `SceMiMessageOutPortProxy` is constructed to serve as the proxy interface to that port and the handle to the constructed object is returned to the caller to serve all future accesses to that port. It shall be an error if no match is found.

The implementation shall copy the contents of the object pointed to by the binding argument to an internal, implementation specific location.

Note: The application is free to de-allocate and/or modify the binding object at any time after calling message output port proxy binding. Since the binding object is copied, the binding itself will not change as a result of this.

### **transactorName, portName**

These arguments uniquely identify a specific message output port in a specific transactor on the hardware side to which the caller wishes to bind. These names must be the path names (described in 5.3.1) expressed in the hardware side bridge's netlist HDL language syntax.

### **binding**

The binding argument is a pointer to an object, defined as follows:

```
struct SceMiMessageOutPortBinding {
    void *Context;
    void (*Receive)(
        void *context,
        const SceMiMessageData *data);
    void (*Close)(void *context);
};
```

whose data members are used for the following:

#### **Context**

The application is free to use this pointer for any purposes it wishes. Neither class `SceMi` nor class `SceMiMessageOutPortProxy` interpret this pointer other than to store it and pass it when calling either the `IsReady()` or `Close()` callbacks.

#### **Receive()**

This is the function pointer for the receive callback used whenever an output message arrives on the port. If this function pointer is set to `NULL`, it indicates that any messages from the output port should be ignored. See 5.4.7.1 for more information about how receive callbacks process output messages.

#### **Close()**

This is a termination callback function pointer. It is called during destruction of the SCE-MI. This pointer can also be optionally specified as `NULL`.

### **5.4.3.7 Service loop**

```
typedef int (*SceMiServiceLoopHandler)( void *context, bool pending );

int
SceMi::ServiceLoop(
    SceMiServiceLoopHandler g=NULL,
    void *context=NULL,
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL );
```

This is the main workhorse method that yields CPU processing time to the SCE-MI. In both single-threaded and multi-threaded environments, calls to this method allow the SCE-MI to service all its port proxies, check for arriving messages or messages which are pending to be sent, and dispatch any input-ready or receive callbacks that might be needed. The underlying transport mechanism that supports the port proxies needs to respond in a relatively timely manner to messages queued on the input or output port proxies. Since these messages cannot be handled until a call to `::ServiceLoop()` is made, applications need to call this function frequently.

The return argument is the number of service requests that arrived from the HDL side and were processed since the last call to `::ServiceLoop()`.

The `::ServiceLoop()` first checks for any pending input messages to be sent and sends them.

#### **g()**

If `g` is `NULL`, `::ServiceLoop()` checks for pending service requests and dispatches them, returning immediately afterwards. If `g()` is non-`NULL`, `::ServiceLoop()` enters a loop of checking for pending service requests, dispatching them, and calling `g()` for each service request. A service request is defined to be one of the following:

An arriving message in a SCE-MI message output port that will result in a receive callback being called.

An input ready notification that will result in an input ready callback being called.

When g() returns 0, control returns from the loop. When g() is called, it is passed a pending flag of 1 or 0 indicating whether or not there is at least one service request pending.

#### **context**

The context argument to `::ServiceLoop` is passed as the context argument to `g()`.

The following pseudo code illustrates implementation of the `::ServiceLoop()` according to the semantics described above:

```
int SceMi::ServiceLoop(
    SceMiServiceLoopHandler g, void* context, SceMiEC* ec)
{
    bool exit_service_loop = false;
    int service_request_count = 0;
    while( input messages pending ) Send them to HDL side.
    while( exit_service_loop == false ) {
        if( input ready notifications pending ){
            Dispatch input ready callback;
            service_request_count++;
            if( g != NULL && g(context, 1) == 0 )
                exit_service_loop = true;
        }
        else if( output messages pending ){
            Dispatch message to appropriate receive callback.
            service_request_count++;
            if ( g != NULL && !g(context, 1) )
                exit_service_loop = true;
        }
        // if( g is not specified ) We kick out of the loop.
        // else we stay in as long as g returns non-zero.
        else if ( g == NULL || g(context, 0) == 0 )
            exit_service_loop = true;
    }
    return service_request_count;
}
```

#### **5.4.3.7.1 Example of using the g() function to return on each call to ::ServiceLoop()**

There are several different ways to use the `g()` function.

Some applications do force a return from the `::ServiceLoop()` call after processing each message. The `::ServiceLoop()` call always guarantees a separate call is made to the `g()` function for each message processed. In fact, it is possible to force `::ServiceLoop()` to return back to the application once per message by having the `g()` function return a 0.

So even if all `g()` does is return 0, as follows,

```
int g( void /*context*/, bool /*pending*/ ){ return 0; }
```

the application forces a return from `::ServiceLoop()` for each processed message.

Note: In this case, the `::ServiceLoop()` does not block because it also returns even if no message was found (i.e., `pending == 0`). Basically `::ServiceLoop()` returns no matter what in this case with zero or one message.

#### **5.4.3.7.2 Example of using the g() function to block ::ServiceLoop() until exactly one message occurs**

An application can use the `g()` function to put `::ServiceLoop()` into a blocking mode rather than its default polling mode. The `g()` function can be written to cause `::ServiceLoop()` to block until it gets one message, then return on the message it received. This is done by making use of the `pending` argument to the `g()` function. This argument simply indicates if there is a message to be processed or not, for example:

```
int g( void /*context*/, bool pending ){
    return pending == true ? 0 : 1 }
```

This blocks until a message occurs, then returns on processing the first message.

#### 5.4.3.7.3 Example of using the g() function to block ::ServiceLoop() until at least one message occurs

Alternatively, suppose the application wants ::ServiceLoop() to block until at least one message occurs, then return only after all the currently pending messages have been processed.

To do this, the application can define a haveProcessedAtLeast1Message flag as follows:

```
int haveProcessedAtLeast1Message = 0;
```

Call ::ServiceLoop() giving the g() function and this flag's address as the context:

```
...
haveProcessedAtLeast1Message = 0;
sceMi->ServiceLoop( g, &haveProcessedAtLeast1Message );
...
```

Now define the g() function as follows:

```
int g( void *context, bool pending ){
    int *haveProcessedAtLeast1Message = (int *)context;
    if( pending == 0 )

        // If no more messages, kick out of loop if at least
        // one previous message has been processed, otherwise
        // block until the first message arrives.
        return *haveProcessedAtLeast1Message ? 0 : 1;
    else {
        *haveProcessedAtLeast1Message = 1;
        return 1;
    }
}
```

In conclusion, depending on precisely what type of operation of ::ServiceLoop() is desired, the g() function can be tailored accordingly.

### 5.4.4 Class SceMiParameters - parameter access

This class provides a generic API which can be used by application code to access the interface parameter set described in 5.3.1. It is basically initialized with the contents of the parameter file generated during infrastructure linkage. It provides accessors that facilitate the reading and possibly overriding of parameters and their values.

All SCE-MI required parameters are read-only, because their values are automatically determined by the infrastructure linker analyzing the user-supplied netlist. Implementation-specific parameters can be read-only or read- write as required by the implementation. All parameters in a SceMiParameters object shall be overridden before that object is passed to the SceMi::Init() call to construct the interface (see 5.4.3.2). Overriding parameters afterwards has no effect.

#### 5.4.4.1 Parameter set

While the format of the parameter file is implementation-specific, the set of parameters required by the SCE-API and the methods used to access them shall conform to the specifications described in this section. For purposes of access, the parameter set shall be organized as a database of attributed objects, where each object instance is decorated with a set of attributes expressed as name/value pairs. There can be zero or more instances of each object kind. The API shall provide a simple accessor to return the number of objects of a given kind, and read and write accessors (described in Table 5.1) to allow reading or overriding attribute values of specific objects.

The objects in the database are composed of the set of necessary interfacing components that interface the SCE- MI infrastructure to the application. For example, there is a distinct object instance for each message port and a distinct object instance representing each defined clock in the system. Attributes of each of the objects

then represent, collectively, the parameters that uniquely characterize the dimensions and constitution of the interface components needed for a particular application.

So, for example, a system that requires one input port, two output ports, and two distinct clocks is represented with five objects, parameterized such that each port object has name and width attributes, each clock object has ratio and duty cycle attributes, etc. These objects and their attributes precisely and fully describe the interfacing requirements between that application and the SCE-MI infrastructure.

Table 5.1 gives the minimal, predefined set of objects and attributes required by the SCE-MI. Additional objects and attributes can be added by implementations. For example, there can be a single, implementation-specific object representing the entire SCE-MI infrastructure facility itself. The attributes of this singleton object can be the set of implementation-specific parameters an implementer of the SCE-MI needs to allow the user to specify.

For more details on attribute meanings, see 5.3.1.

Object kind	Attribute name	Attribute value type	Meaning
MessageInPort	TransactorName	String	Name of the transactor enclosing the message input port.
	PortName	String	Name of the message input port.
	PortWidth	Integer	Width of the message input port in bits.
MessageOutPort	TransactorName	String	Name of the transactor enclosing the message output port.
	PortName	String	Name of the message output port.
	PortWidth	Integer	Width of the message output port in bits.
Clock	ClockName	String	Name of the clock.
	RatioNumerator	Integer	Numerator (“fast” clock cycles) of clock ratio.
	RatioDenominator	Integer	Denominator (“this” clock cycles) of clock ratio.
	DutyHi	Integer	High cycle percentage of duty cycle.
	DutyLo	Integer	Low cycle percentage of duty cycle.
	Phase	Integer	Phase shift as percentage of duty cycle.
	ResetCycles	Integer	Number of controlled clock cycles of reset.
ClockBinding	TransactorName	String	Name of the transactor that contributes to the control of this clock.
	ClockName	String	Name of the clock that this transactor helps control.

**Table 5.1: Minimum set of predefined objects and attributes, continued**

For simplicity, values can be signed integer or string values. More complex data types can be derived by the application code from string values. Each attribute definition of each object kind implies a specific value type.

#### 5.4.4.2 Parameter set semantics

Although the accessors provided by the `SceMiParameters` class directly provide the information given in Table 1, other implied parameters can be easily derived by the application. Following are some of the implied parameters and how they are determined:

ClockBinding objects indicate the total number of transactor - clock control macro combinations. The number of distinct contributors to the control of a given clock, as well as the number of distinct transactors in the system, can be ascertained via the ClockBinding objects.

The number of transactors in the system is determined by counting the number of distinct TransactorName’s encountered in the ClockBinding objects.

The number of controlled clocks is determined by reading the number of Clock objects (using the `::NumberOfObjects()` accessor described below).

The number of input and output ports is determined by reading the number of `MessageInPort` and `MessageOutPort` objects, respectively.

In addition, the following semantics characterize the parameter set.

- a) Transactor names are absolute hierarchical path names and shall conform to the bridge's netlist HDL language syntax.
- b) Port names are relative hierarchical path names (relative to the enclosing transactor) and shall conform to the bridge's netlist HDL language syntax.
- c) Clock names are identifiers, not path names, and shall conform to the bridge's netlist HDL language identifier naming syntax.

#### 5.4.4.3 Constructor

```
SceMiParameters::SceMiParameters(  
    const char *paramsFile,  
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL );
```

The constructor constructs an object containing all the default values of parameters and then overrides them with any settings it finds in the specified parameter file. All parameters, whether specified by the user or not shall have default values. Once constructed, parameters can be further overridden procedurally.

#### paramsFile

This is the name of the file generated by the infrastructure linker which contains all the parameters derived from the user's hardware side netlist. This name can be a full pathname to a file or a pathname relative to the local directory.

#### 5.4.4.4 Destructor

```
SceMiParameters::~~SceMiParameters()
```

This is the destructor for the parameters object.

#### 5.4.4.5 Accessors

```
unsigned int  
SceMiParameters::NumberOfObjects(  
    const char *objectKind,  
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL ) const;
```

This accessor returns the number of instances of objects of the specified `objectKind` name.

```
int  
SceMiParameters::AttributeIntegerValue(  
    const char *objectKind,  
    unsigned int index,  
    const char *attributeName,  
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL ) const;  
const char *  
SceMiParameters::AttributeStringValue(  
    const char *objectKind,  
    unsigned int index,  
    const char *attributeName,  
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL ) const;
```

The implementation guarantees the pointer is valid until `Shutdown()` is called for read-only attributes. For non-read-only attributes, the implementation guarantees the pointer is valid until `Shutdown()` or `OverrideAttributeStringValue()` of the attribute whichever comes first.

Note: If the application needs the string value for an extended period of time, it may copy the string value to a privately managed memory area.

These two accessors read and return an integer or string attribute value.

```
void
SceMiParameters::OverrideAttributeIntegerValue (
    const char *objectKind,
    unsigned int index,
    const char *attributeName,
    int value,
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL );

void
SceMiParameters::OverrideAttributeStringValue (
    const char *objectKind,
    unsigned int index,

    const char *attributeName,
    const char *value,
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL );
```

These two accessors override an integer or string attribute value. It shall be an error to attempt to override any of the object attributes shown in Table 1, any implementation-specific attributes designated as read-only or any attribute that is not already in the parameter database.

The following argument descriptions generally apply to all the accessors shown above.

**objectKind**

Name of the kind of object for which an attribute value is being accessed. It shall be an error to pass an unrecognized `objectKind` name to any of the accessors.

**index**

Index of the instance of the object for which an attribute value is being accessed. It shall be an error if the `index >=` the number returned by the `::NumberOfObjects()` accessor.

**attributeName**

Name of the attribute whose value is being read or overwritten. It shall be an error if the `attributeName` does not identify one of the attributes allowed for the given `objectKind`.

**value**

Returned or passed in value of the attribute being read or overridden respectively. Two overloaded variants of each accessor are provided: one for string values and one for integer values.

### 5.4.5 Class `SceMiMessageData` - message data object

The class `SceMiMessageData` represents the vector of message data that can be transferred from a `SceMiMessageInPortProxy` on the software side to its associated `SceMiMessageInPort` on the hardware side or from a `SceMiMessageOutPort` on the hardware side to its associated `SceMiMessageOutPortProxy` on the software side. The message data payload is represented as a fixed-length array of `SceMiU32` data words large enough to contain the bit vector being transferred to or from the hardware side message port. For example, if the message port had a width of 72 bits, Figure 5.9 shows how those bits are organized in the data array contained inside the `SceMiMessageData` object.

ScemiMessage[In/Out]Port.Message[] bits:

31	...	1,0	ScemiMessageData word 0
63	...	33,32	ScemiMessageData word 1
		71 ... 65,64	ScemiMessageData word 2

Figure 5.9 Organizing 72 bits in a data array

#### 5.4.5.1 Constructor

```
ScemiMessageData::ScemiMessageData (
    const ScemiMessageInPortProxy &messageInPortProxy,
    ScemiEC *ec=NULL );
```

This constructs a message data object whose size matches the width of the specified input port. The constructed message data object can only be used for sends on that port (or another of identical size) or an error will result.

#### Destructor

```
ScemiMessageData::~ScemiMessageData ()
```

This destructs the object and frees the data array.

#### 5.4.5.2 Accessors

```
unsigned int
ScemiMessageData::WidthInBits() const;
This returns the width of the message in terms of number of bits.
unsigned int
ScemiMessageData::WidthInWords() const;
```

This returns the size of the data array in terms of number of ScemiU32 words.

```
void
ScemiMessageData::Set( unsigned int i, ScemiU32 word, ScemiEC *ec = NULL );
```

This sets word element *i* of the array to word.

```
void
ScemiMessageData::SetBit( unsigned int i, int bit, ScemiEC *ec = NULL );
```

This sets bit element *i* of the message vector to 0 if *bit* == 0, otherwise to 1. It is an error if *i* >= ::WidthInBits().

```
void
ScemiMessageData::SetBitRange(
    unsigned int i, unsigned int range, ScemiU32 bits, ScemiEC *ec = NULL );
```

This sets range bit elements whose LSB's start at bit element *i* of the message vector to the value of bits. It is an error if *i*+range >= ::WidthInBits().

#### ScemiU32

```
ScemiMessageData::Get( unsigned int i, ScemiEC *ec = NULL ) const;
This returns the word at slot i in the array. It is an error if i >=
::WidthInWords().
int
ScemiMessageData::GetBit( unsigned int i, ScemiEC *ec = NULL ) const;
```

This returns the value of bit element *i* in the message vector. It is an error if *i* >= ::WidthInBits().

```
ScemiU32
ScemiMessageData::GetBitRange( unsigned int i, unsigned int range, ScemiEC *ec
```

```
= NULL ) const;
```

This returns the value of range bit elements whose LSB's start at `i` of the message vector. It is an error if `i+range >= ::WidthInBits()`.

```
SceMiU64
SceMiMessageData::CycleStamp() const;
```

The SCE-MI supports a feature called cycle stamping. Each output message sent to the software side is stamped with the number of cycles of the 1/1 controlled clock since the end of `creset` at the time the message is accepted by the infrastructure. The cycle stamp shall be 0 while `creset` is asserted and 1 at the point of alignment. This is shown diagrammatically in Figure 5.10. The cycle stamp provides a convenient way for applications to keep track of elapsed cycles in their respective transactors as the simulation proceeds. The returned value is an absolute, 64-bit unsigned quantity. For more information on the point of alignment, refer to 5.2.4.5.

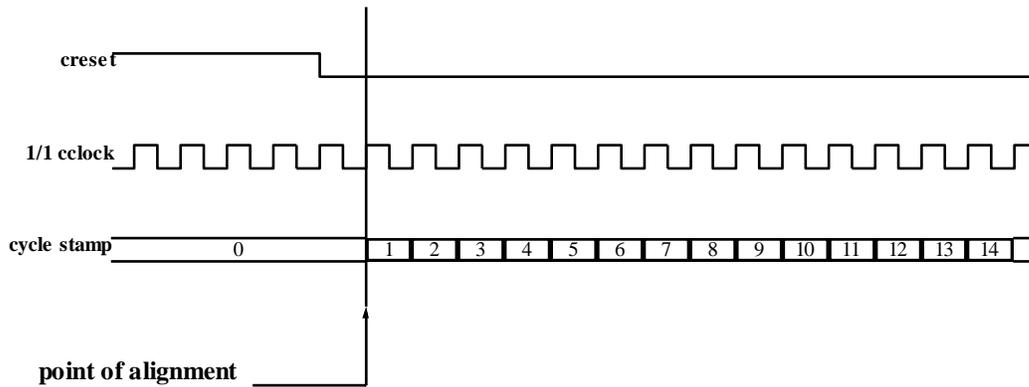


Figure 5.10 Cycle Stamps

Note: It is suggested that messages should not be sent during the reset period. If they are sent they will all have a cycle stamp of zero irrespective of the actual clock cycle that they occur on.

## 5.4.6 Class `SceMiMessageInPortProxy`

The class `SceMiMessageInPortProxy` presents to the application a proxy interface to a transactor message input port.

### 5.4.6.1 Sending input messages

```
void
SceMiMessageInPortProxy::Send(
    const SceMiMessageData &data,
    SceMiEC *ec=NULL );
```

This method sends a message to the message input channel. This message appears on the hardware side as a bit vector presented to the transactor via the `SceMiMessageInPort` macro (see 5.2.2), instance-bound to this proxy.

#### **data**

This is a message data object containing the message to be sent. This object may be arbitrarily modified after `Send()` and used for an arbitrary number of sends to the same and other message ports.

### 5.4.6.2 Replacing port binding

```
void ReplaceBinding(  
    const SceMiMessageInPortBinding* binding = NULL,  
    SceMiEC* ec=NULL );
```

This method replaces the `SceMiMessageInPortBinding` object originally furnished to the `SceMi::BindMessageInPortProxy()` call that created this port proxy object (see 5.4.3.5). This can be useful for replacing contexts or input-ready callback functions some time after the input message port proxy has been established.

The implementation shall copy the contents of the object pointed to by the binding argument to an internal, implementation specific location.

Note: The application is free to deallocate and/or modify the binding object at any time after calling replace port binding. Since the binding object is copied, the binding itself will not change as a result of this.

#### **binding**

This is new callback and context information associated with this message input port proxy.

If the binding argument is given as a NULL, the SCE-MI assumes that each of the `Context`, `IsReady()`, and `Close()` data members have NULL values.

Note: The `ReplaceBinding()` call below

```
SceMiMessageInPortProxy *inProxy;  
  
// ...  
inProxy->ReplaceBinding();
```

is equivalent to this code

```
SceMiMessageInPortProxy *inProxy;  
  
// ...  
  
SceMiMessageInPortBinding inBinding;  
  
inBinding.Context = NULL;  
inBinding.IsReady = NULL;  
inBinding.Close = NULL;  
  
inProxy->ReplaceBinding(&inBinding);
```

### 5.4.6.3 Accessors

```
const char *  
SceMiMessageInPortProxy::TransactorName() const;
```

This method returns the name of the transactor connected to the port. This is the absolute hierarchical path name to the transactor instance expressed in the netlist's HDL language syntax.

```
const char *  
SceMiMessageInPortProxy::PortName() const;
```

This method returns the port name. This is the path name to the `SceMiMessageInPort` macro instance relative to the containing transactor netlist's HDL language syntax.

```
unsigned  
SceMiMessageInPortProxy::PortWidth() const;
```

This method returns the port width. This is the value of the `PortWidth` parameter that was passed to the associated `SceMiMessageInPort` instance on the hardware side.

#### 5.4.6.4 Destructor

There is no public destructor for this class. Destruction of all message input ports shall automatically occur when the `SceMi::ShutDown()` function is called.

#### 5.4.7 Class `SceMiMessageOutPortProxy`

The class `MessageOutPortProxy` presents to the application a proxy interface to the transactor message output port.

##### 5.4.7.1 Receiving output messages

There are no methods on this object specifically for reading messages that arrive on the output port proxy. Instead, that operation is handled by the receive callbacks. Receive callbacks are registered with an output port proxy when it is first bound to the channel (see 5.4.3.6). The prototype for the receive callback is:

```
void (*Receive)( void *context, const SceMiMessageData *data );
```

When called, the receive callback is passed a pointer to a class `SceMiMessageData` object (see 5.4.5), which contains the content of the received message, and the context pointer. The context pointer is typically a pointer to the object representing the software model interfacing to the port proxy.

Use this callback to process the data quickly and return as soon as possible. The reference to the `SceMiMessageData` is of limited lifetime and ceases to exist once the callback returns and goes out of scope. Typically in a SystemC context, the callback does some minor manipulation to the context object, then immediately returns and lets a suspended thread resume and do the main processing of the received transaction.

No `SceMiEC * error status` object is passed to the call, because if an error occurs within the `SceMi::ServiceLoop()` function (from which the receive callback is normally called), the callback is never called and standard error handling procedures (see 5.4.2.2) are followed by the service loop function itself. If an error occurs inside the receive callback, by implication it is an application error, not an SCE-MI error, and thus is the application's responsibility to handle (perhaps setting a flag in the context object before returning from the callback).

It shall be an error if the class `SceMiMessageData` object passed to the receive callback is passed as the class `SceMiMessageData` argument of the `SceMiMessageInPortProxy::Send()` method. Modifying the class `SceMiMessageData` object by casting away `const` leads to undefined behavior. This is in addition to any compiler/run-time problems that may be generated by doing this.

##### 5.4.7.2 Replacing port binding

```
void ReplaceBinding(  
    const SceMiMessageOutPortBinding* binding,  
    SceMiEC* ec=NULL );
```

This method replaces the `SceMiMessageOutPortBinding` object originally furnished to the `SceMi::BindMessageOutPortProxy()` call that created this port proxy object (see 5.4.3.6). This can be useful for replacing contexts or receive callback functions some time after the output message port proxy has been established. Setting the receive callback to a `NULL` value indicates that any message from the output can be ignored.

The implementation shall copy the contents of the object pointed to by the binding argument to an internal, implementation specific location.

Note: The application is free to deallocate and/or modify the binding object at any time after calling replace port binding. Since the binding object is copied, the binding itself will not change as a result of this.

#### **binding**

This is new callback and context information associated with this message output port proxy.

### 5.4.7.3 Accessors

```
const char *  
SceMiMessageOutPortProxy::TransactorName() const;
```

This method returns the name of the transactor connected to the port. This is the absolute hierarchical path name to the transactor instance expressed in the netlist's HDL language syntax.

```
const char *  
SceMiMessageOutPortProxy::PortName() const;
```

This method returns the port name. This is the path name to the `SceMiMessageOutPort` macro instance relative to the containing transactor expressed in the netlist's HDL language syntax.

```
unsigned  
SceMiMessageOutPortProxy::PortWidth() const;
```

This method returns the port width. This is the value of the `PortWidth` parameter that was passed to the associated `SceMiMessageOutPort` instance on the hardware side.

### 5.4.7.4 Destructor

There is no public destructor for this class. Destruction of all message output ports shall automatically occur when the `SceMi::ShutDown()` function is called.

## 5.5 Macro-based software side interface - C API

The SCI-MI software side also provides an ANSI standard C API. All of the following subsections parallel those described in the C++ API. The C API can be implemented as functions that wrap calls to methods described in the C++ API. The prototypes of those functions are shown in this section. For full documentation on a function, see its corresponding subsection in 5.4.

### 5.5.1 Primitive data types

The C API has its own header file with the following minimum content:

```

typedef unsigned SceMiU32;
typedef unsigned long long SceMiU64;
typedef void SceMi;
typedef void SceMiParameters;
typedef void SceMiMessageData;
typedef void SceMiMessageInPortProxy;
typedef void SceMiMessageOutPortProxy;

typedef int (*ServiceLoopHandler)( void *context, int pending );

typedef enum {
    SceMiOK,
    SceMiError,
} SceMiErrorType;
typedef struct {
    const char *Culprit;
    const char *Message;
    SceMiErrorType Type;
    int Id;
} SceMiEC;
typedef void (*SceMiErrorHandler)(void *context, SceMiEC *ec);

typedef enum {
    SceMiInfo,
    SceMiWarning
} SceMiInfoType;
typedef struct {
    const char *Culprit;
    const char *Message;
    SceMiInfoType Type;
    int Id;
} SceMiIC;
typedef void (*SceMiInfoHandler)(void *context, SceMiIC *ic);

typedef struct {
    void *Context;
    void (*IsReady)(void *context);
    void (*Close)(void *context);
} SceMiMessageInPortBinding;
typedef struct {
    void *Context;
    void (*Receive)(
        void *context,
        const SceMiMessageData *data );
    void (*Close)(void *context);
} SceMiMessageOutPortBinding;

```

An application shall include either the C API header or the C++ API header, but not both.

Note: Because ANSI C does not support default argument values, the last SceMiEC \*ec argument to each function must be explicitly passed when called, even if only to pass a NULL.

## 5.5.2 Miscellaneous interface support issues

The C miscellaneous functions have semantics like the corresponding C++ methods (shown within 5.4).

```
SceMiEC - error handling  
void  
SceMiRegisterErrorHandler(  
    SceMiErrorHandler errorHandler,  
    void *context );
```

#### **5.5.2.1 SceMiIC - informational status and warning handling (info handling)**

```
void  
SceMiRegisterInfoHandler(  
    SceMiInfoHandler infoHandler,  
    void *context );
```

#### **5.5.3 SceMi - SCE-MI software side interface**

See also 5.4.3.

### 5.5.3.1 Version discovery

```
int
SceMiVersion( const char *versionString );
1.1.4.18      Initialization
SceMi *
SceMiInit(
    int version,
    const SceMiParameters *parameterObjectHandle,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

### 5.5.3.2 SceMi Object Pointer Access

```
SceMi *
SceMiPointer(
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

### 5.5.3.3 Shutdown

```
void
SceMiShutdown(
    SceMi *sceMiHandle,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

### 5.5.3.4 Message input port proxy binding

```
SceMiMessageInPortProxy *
SceMiBindMessageInPort(
    SceMi *sceMiHandle,
    const char *transactorName,
    const char *portName,
    const SceMiMessageInPortBinding *binding,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

### 5.5.3.5 Message output port proxy binding

```
SceMiMessageOutPortProxy *
SceMiBindMessageOutPort(
    SceMi *sceMiHandle,
    const char *transactorName,
    const char *portName,
    const SceMiMessageOutPortBinding *binding,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

### 5.5.3.6 Service loop

```
int
SceMiServiceLoop(
    SceMi *sceMiHandle,
    SceMiServiceLoopHandler g,
    void *context,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

## 5.5.4 SceMiParameters - parameter access

See also 5.4.4.

### 5.5.4.1 Constructor

```
SceMiParameters *
SceMiParametersNew(
    const char *paramsFile,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

This function returns the handle to a parameters object.

### 5.5.4.2 Destructor

```
void
ScemiParametersDelete(
    ScemiParameters *parametersHandle );
```

### 5.5.4.3 Accessors

```
unsigned int
ScemiParametersNumberOfObjects(
    const ScemiParameters *parametersHandle,
    const char *objectKind,
    ScemiEC *ec );

int
ScemiParametersAttributeIntegerValue(
    const ScemiParameters *parametersHandle,
    const char *objectKind,
    unsigned int index,
    const char *attributeName,
    ScemiEC *ec );

const char *
ScemiParametersAttributeStringValue(
    const ScemiParameters *parametersHandle,
    const char *objectKind,
    unsigned int index,
    const char *attributeName,
    ScemiEC *ec );

void
ScemiParametersOverrideAttributeIntegerValue(
    ScemiParameters *parametersHandle,
    const char *objectKind,
    unsigned int index,
    const char *attributeName,
    int value,
    ScemiEC *ec );

void
ScemiParametersOverrideAttributeStringValue(
    ScemiParameters *parametersHandle,
    const char *objectKind,
    unsigned int index,
    const char *attributeName,
    const char *value,
    ScemiEC *ec );
```

## 5.5.5 ScemiMessageData - message data object

See also 5.4.5.

### 5.5.5.1 Constructor

```
ScemiMessageData *
ScemiMessageDataNew(
    const ScemiMessageInPortProxy *messageInPortProxyHandle,
    ScemiEC *ec );
```

This function returns the handle to a message data object suitable for sending messages on the specified input port proxy.

### 5.5.5.2 Destructor

```
void
SceMiMessageDataDelete(
    SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle );
```

### 5.5.5.3 Accessors

```
unsigned int
SceMiMessageDataWidthInBits(
    const SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle );
```

```
unsigned int
SceMiMessageDataWidthInWords(
    const SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle );
```

```
void
SceMiMessageDataSet(
    SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    SceMiU32 word,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

```
void
SceMiMessageDataSetBit(
    SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    int bit,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

```
void
SceMiMessageDataSetBitRange(
    SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    unsigned int range,
    SceMiU32 bits,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

```
SceMiU32
SceMiMessageDataGet(
    const SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

```
int
SceMiMessageDataGetBit(
    const SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

```
SceMiU32
SceMiMessageDataGetBitRange(
    const SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    unsigned int range,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

```
SceMiU64
SceMiMessageDataCycleStamp(
    const SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle );
```

## 5.5.6 SceMiMessageInPortProxy - message input port proxy

See also 5.4.6.

### 5.5.6.1 Sending input messages

```
void
SceMiMessageInPortProxySend(
    SceMiMessageInPortProxy *messageInPortProxyHandle,
    const SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle,
    SceMiEC *ec );
```

### 5.5.6.2 Replacing port binding

```
void SceMiMessageInPortProxyReplaceBinding(
    SceMiMessageInPortProxy *messageInPortProxyHandle,
    const SceMiMessageInPortBinding* binding,
    SceMiEC* ec );
```

### 5.5.6.3 Accessors

```
const char *
SceMiMessageInPortProxyTransactorName(
    const SceMiMessageInPortProxy *messageInPortProxyHandle );

const char *
SceMiMessageInPortProxyPortName(
    const SceMiMessageInPortProxy *messageInPortProxyHandle );

unsigned
SceMiMessageInPortProxyPortWidth(
    const SceMiMessageInPortProxy *messageInPortProxyHandle );
```

## 5.5.7 SceMiMessageOutPortProxy - message output port proxy

See also 5.4.7.

### 5.5.7.1 Replacing port binding

```
void SceMiMessageOutPortProxyReplaceBinding(
    SceMiMessageOutPortProxy *messageOutPortProxyHandle,
    const SceMiMessageOutPortBinding* binding,
    SceMiEC* ec );
```

### 5.5.7.2 Accessors

```
const char *
SceMiMessageOutPortProxyTransactorName(
    const SceMiMessageOutPortProxy *messageOutPortProxyHandle );

const char *
SceMiMessageOutPortProxyPortName(
    const SceMiMessageOutPortProxy *messageOutPortProxyHandle );

unsigned
SceMiMessageOutPortProxyPortWidth(
    const SceMiMessageInPortProxy *messageOutPortProxyHandle );
```

## 5.6 Function-based interface

### 5.6.1 The DPI C-layer

This section defines the C side of DPI.

#### 5.6.1.1 Compliant subset of the SystemVerilog DPI C Layer

The SCE-MI 2 standard defines a subset of a DPI compliant SystemVerilog / C Layer and a subset of DPI data types supported by the SCE-MI 2 standard. That subset conforms to the DPI C Layer as described in the "DPI C layer" annex of the SystemVerilog LRM (see Reference [3]).

### 5.6.1.2 Binding is automatic - based on static names

SCE-MI 2 function-based interface supports binding between where the DPI functions are defined and from where they are called based on static C symbol names. The user needs to define a function on one side and call it from the other side. A SCE-MI 2 implementation will ensure that wrappers with matching symbol names are provided where appropriate.

All C DPI symbol names conform to ANSI-C naming conventions and linkage. This provides a C symbol linkage mechanism that is adaptable to the HVL environment used on the software side.

### 5.6.1.3 Supported types, static mapping

The SystemVerilog LRM IEEE Std. 1800-2012 annex titled "DPI C layer" defines the mapping between the basic SystemVerilog data types and the corresponding C types.

*DPI supports a variety of flexible data types ranging from simple scalar types such as integers to bit vectors to complex structures and dynamic arrays and the mapping between C data types and SystemVerilog DPI types.*

Table 5.3 lists the subset of those mappings between SystemVerilog and C supported for SCE-MI 2.

DPI formal argument types	Corresponding types mapped to C
Scalar basic types: byte byte unsigned shortint shortint unsigned int int unsigned longint longint unsigned	Scalar basic types: char unsigned char short int unsigned short int int unsigned int long long unsigned long long
scalar values of type bit	unsigned char (with specifically defined values)
packed one-dimensional arrays of type bit and logic	canonical arrays of svBitVecVal and svLogicVecVal
Constant string type: string	Constant string type: const char *
packed struct types	C structs
packed multi-dimensional arrays of type bit and logic	Canonical arrays of svBitVecVal and svLogicVecVal

**Table 5.3: Subset of DPI mapping supported in SCE-MI 2 function-based interface**

Note: Integer types, although supported, come with the caveat described above that for C their widths are not cast in stone but for SystemVerilog they are. As a result, the user will have to be aware of this when using these types in terms of knowing when padding is implied and when masking is required. That said, scalar data types that can be passed by value are extremely useful and are supported in SCE-MI 2. It shall of course be assumed that the fixed sizes of these types on the HDL side will be maintained and will always synthesize to the same number of bits.

#### 5.6.1.3.1 4-State logic types

SCE-MI 2 supports conveying both 2 state and 4 state logic types from the HDL side to the C side and vice versa. SCE-MI 2 implementations can handle 4 state logic types as follows:

- No coercion – the HDL side natively supports 4 state types
- No coercion – from HDL to C as the HDL will convey either 2 state types or 4 state types depending on whether the HDL side supports 2 states or 4 state types.
- Coercion – from C to HDL if the HDL side only supports 2 state types. In this case X will be coerced to 1 and Z will be coerced to 0.

Note: Implementations can provide additional coercion options including warnings when coercion takes place.

Note: The above allows models using 4 state logic types to run on SCE-MI 2 compliant implementation without code modification. Support of 4 states types using coercion, while allowing 4 state types to run on 2 state HDL engines (such as 2 states emulators) does not imply that models using 4 states types will provide results consistent with 4 state HDL engines (such as 4 state simulators) or even correct results. It is up to the modeler/user to decide whether to keep the modes unchanged or remodel the types to 2 state types.

#### 5.6.1.3.2 Constant string literal types

The SystemVerilog standard supports arguments of type `input string` for both *export "DPI-C"* and *import "DPI-C"* functions. Such arguments map to type `const char *` on the C side.

For the SCE-MI standard DPI subset, passing of strings shall be allowed for *import "DPI-C" functions* only. It shall also be required that any string values passed are `const` strings, string literals, statically specified parameters of type `string` that can be passed down from higher levels of the HDL-side hierarchy.

Example: Passing a string to an import “DPI-C” function:

C-side implementation of *import "DPI-C"* function:

```
extern "C" void identifyMyself( const char *myId ){
    MyContext *me =
        (MyContext *)svGetUserData( svGetScope(), (void *)&identifyMyself );
    me->setMyId( myId );
}
```

HDL-side declaration and calling of *import "DPI-C"* function:

```
import "DPI-C" function void identifyMyself( input string myId );
...
const string localId = "MyId"; // Could also be a string parameter.
identifyMyself( localId );     // Could also be direct literal
                                // or string parameter.
...
```

#### 5.6.1.3.3 Packed struct types

The SCE-MI 2 DPI subset also supports *packed struct* argument types.

According to IEEE Std. 1800 (Reference [3] - SystemVerilog), a `packed struct` type is a convenient way to arrange an aggregate set of bit fields but it has the same basic layout and arithmetic bit equivalency as a 1-d packed array.

To quote the IEEE Std. 1800 from the **Structures** section of the **Aggregate data types** chapter:

*“A packed structure is a mechanism for subdividing a vector into subfields, which can be conveniently accessed as members. Consequently, a packed structure consists of bit fields, which are packed together in memory without gaps.”*

...

*“A packed structure can be used as a whole with arithmetic and logical operators. The first member specified is the most significant and subsequent members follow in decreasing significance.”*

Additionally, in the **DPI C layer** annex of the IEEE Std. 1800, it is stated that packed structs are supported as valid DPI argument types and they are, for all practical purposes, treated as 1-dimensional packed arrays and thus the C-side canonical representation applies for packed structs as well.

To quote IEEE Std. 1800, from the **DPI C layer** annex:

*“In addition to declaring DPI formal arguments of packed bit and logic arrays, it is also possible to declare formal arguments of packed struct and union types. DPI handles these types as if they were declared with equivalent one-dimensional packed array syntax.”*

This means that on the C side all packed struct arguments are mapped to either svBitVecVal arrays or svLogicVecVal arrays just as packed arrays are.

Additionally, it should be noted that, according to IEEE Std. 1800, if any field of a packed struct is a 4-state data type, the C canonical representation will also be a 4-state svLogicVecVal array.

Whereas if all fields of a packed struct are 2-state data types then the C canonical representation can be the more optimal svBitVecVal array.

Example: Passing a packed struct to an export “DPI-C” function:

HDL-side implementation of export "DPI-C" function:

```
typedef struct packed {
    byte unsigned idNum;
    int unsigned value;
} TransactionType;

TransactionType localTransaction;

export "DPI-C" function passTransaction;
function void passTransaction( input TransactionType transactionIn );
    localTransaction = transactionIn;
    $display( "idNum=%0d value=x%0x",
        localTransaction.myId,
        localTransaction.value );
endfunction
```

C-side declaration and calling of export "DPI-C" function:

```
struct TransactionType {
    unsigned char idNum;
    unsigned value;
};

extern "C" void passTransaction( const svBitVecVal *transactionIn );

...
TransactionType myTransaction = { 1, 0xbeefcafe };

svBitVecVal myTransactionVec[2];

svPutPartselBit( myTransactionVec, myTransaction.idNum, 32, 8 );
svPutPartselBit( myTransactionVec, myTransaction.value, 0, 32 );

svSetScope( hdlScope );
passTransaction( myTransactionVec );
...
```

Note that because of the above-cited rules in SystemVerilog dictating mapping of packed structs to DPI canonical array representation, the above C example can be conveniently simplified to,

```
struct TransactionType { // Note reversal of fields from above.
    unsigned value;
    unsigned char idNum;
};

extern "C" void passTransaction( const svBitVecVal *transactionIn );

...
TransactionType myTransaction = { 0xbeefcafe, 1 };

svSetScope( hdlScope );
passTransaction( (const svBitVecval *)(&myTransaction) );
...
```

But only provided that the field mappings in the C definition of `TransactionType` are reversed from those in HDL. The reason, again, is that in SystemVerilog the first member specified is the most significant and subsequent members follow in decreasing significance, as mentioned 2nd quoted paragraph above. Yet in the C language's binary layout, the first member is the least significant. This lack of correspondence is a unique feature of the SystemVerilog language specification for packed struct semantics - to support direct arithmetic manipulation of aggregate packed structs.

Example: Passing a packed struct from an import "DPI-C" function:

C-side implementation of import "DPI-C" function:

```
struct TransactionType {
    unsigned char idNum;
    unsigned value;
}

extern "C" void receiveTransaction( svBitVecVal *transactionOut ){
    TransactionType *me =
        (TransactionType *)svGetUserData(
            svGetScope(), (void *)(&receiveTransaction) );

    svPutPartselBit( transactionOut, me->idNum, 32, 8 );
    svPutPartselBit( transactionOut, me->value, 0, 32 );
}
```

HDL-side declaration and calling of import "DPI-C" function:

```
typedef struct packed {
    byte unsigned idNum;
    int unsigned value;
} TransactionType;

import "DPI-C" function void receiveTransaction(
    output TransactionType transactionOut );

TransactionType localTransaction;

...
receiveTransaction( localTransaction );
...
```

#### 5.6.1.4 Multidimensional bit and logic array argument types

The SCE-MI 2 DPI subset supports multidimensional bit and logic array argument types for import and export DPI-C functions.

Note: As a pretext to understanding the examples of multidimensional bit argument types for DPI functions, a review of IEEE Std. 1800 (Reference [B3] - SystemVerilog) for handling multidimensional arrays is provided.

According to IEEE Std. 1800, multidimensional arrays in SystemVerilog are linearized equivalents of one dimensional arrays in C. To quote the LRM from the **Data types** section of the annex on the **DPI C layer**:

*“Packed arrays can have an arbitrary number of dimensions although they are eventually always equivalent to a one-dimensional packed array and treated as such. If the packed part of an array in the type of a formal argument in SystemVerilog is specified as multidimensional, the SystemVerilog compiler linearizes it.”*

Additionally,

*“Linearizing a SystemVerilog array with multiple packed dimensions consists of treating an array with dimension sizes (i, j, k) as if it had a single dimension with size (i \* j \* k) and had been stored as a one-dimensional array. The one-dimensional array has the same layout as the corresponding multidimensional array stored in row-major order.”*

And the following rules are stated for mapping between SystemVerilog ranges and C ranges:

*“For all types of formal argument other than open arrays, the SystemVerilog ranges are defined in the corresponding SystemVerilog import or export declaration. Normalized ranges are used for accessing such arguments in C code. C ranges for multiple packed dimensions are linearized and normalized. The mapping between SystemVerilog ranges and C ranges is defined as follows:*

- a) If a packed part of an array has more than one dimension, it is linearized as specified by the equivalence of packed types (see H.7.5 and 6.22.2).*
- b) A packed array of range [L:R] is normalized as [abs(L-R):0]; its MSB has a normalized index abs(L-R) and its LSB has a normalized index 0.*
- c) The natural order of elements for each dimension in the layout of an unpacked array shall be used, i.e., elements with lower indices go first. For SystemVerilog range [L:R], the element with SystemVerilog index min(L,R) has the C index 0 and the element with SystemVerilog index max(L,R) has the C index abs(L-R).*

*The above range mapping from SystemVerilog to C applies to calls made in both directions, i.e., SystemVerilog calls to C and C calls to SystemVerilog.*

*For example, if logic [2:3][1:3][2:0] b [1:10] [31:0] is used in SystemVerilog, it needs to be defined in C as if it were declared in SystemVerilog in the following normalized form: logic [17:0] b [0:9] [0:31].”*

To summarize, the normalized ranges of multidimensional SystemVerilog arrays of `bit` or `logic` will map to a single linear range of canonical DPI `svBitVecVals` or `svLogicVecVals` respectively.

Example: Passing a multidimensional array to an export “DPI-C” function:

HDL-side implementation of export "DPI-C" function:

```

bit [15:0] localArray [0:9];

export "DPI-C" function passArray;
function void passArray( input bit [2:3][1:2][3:0] arrayIn [1:10] );
    localArray = arrayIn;

    assert(
        localArray[0] = 0 &&
        localArray[1] = 1 &&
        localArray[2] = 2 &&
        localArray[3] = 3 &&
        localArray[4] = 4 &&
        localArray[5] = 5 &&
        localArray[6] = 6 &&
        localArray[7] = 7 &&
        localArray[8] = 8 &&
        localArray[9] = 9 );
endfunction

```

C-side declaration and calling of export "DPI-C" function:

```

extern "C" void passArray( const svBitVecVal *arrayIn );

...
svBitVecVal myArray[5];

for( i=0; i<10; i++ )
    svPutPartselBit( myArray, i, i*16, 16 );

svSetScope( hdlScope );
passArray( myArray );
...

```

Example: Passing a multidimensional array from an import "DPI-C" function:

C-side implementation of import "DPI-C" function:

```

extern "C" void receiveArray( svBitVecVal *arrayOut ){
    for( i=0; i<10; i++ )
        svPutPartselBit( arrayOut, i, i*16, 16 );
}

```

HDL-side declaration and calling of import "DPI-C" function:

```

import "DPI-C" function void receiveArray(
    output bit [2:3][1:2][3:0] arrayOut [1:10] );

bit [15:0] localArray [0:9];

...
receiveArray( localArray );

assert(
    localArray[0] = 0 &&
    localArray[1] = 1 &&
    localArray[2] = 2 &&
    localArray[3] = 3 &&
    localArray[4] = 4 &&
    localArray[5] = 5 &&
    localArray[6] = 6 &&
    localArray[7] = 7 &&
    localArray[8] = 8 &&
    localArray[9] = 9 );
...

```

## 5.6.2 The DPI SystemVerilog layer

This section defines the SystemVerilog side of DPI.

### 5.6.2.1 Functions and tasks

The SystemVerilog DPI supports both functions and tasks. An imported or exported DPI function always executes in 0-time. An exported or imported DPI task, by contrast, can execute in 0-time or can consume time.

SCE-MI function-based interface supports exported or imported DPI functions and supports exported and imported DPI tasks. Unless explicitly mentioned in the SCE-MI spec, references to exported and imported DPI functions will also relate to exported and imported DPI tasks. Any subsets and restrictions defined for exported or imported DPI functions also apply to exported or imported DPI tasks.

SCE-MI only supports calling exported tasks from a context DPI imported task call chain. It does not allow calling it from outside a context DPI imported function or task call chain. No DPI imported task calls, and, by implication, call tasks for functions in an imported task call chain, can be time consuming. As such, they must execute in zero simulation time or delta simulation time from when the imported DPI task was invoked. Any use of imported and exported DPI task which is not allowed by the SystemVerilog LRM or is considered unpredictable or undefined, is not supported by SCE-MI.

Note: Section 4.10 extends the scope of calling DPI exported functions to applications linked with the C side considered by the SystemVerilog LRM “outside a context DPI imported function call chain”. This extension only applies to DPI exported functions and does not apply to DPI exported tasks.

### 5.6.2.2 Support for multiple messages in 0-time

DPI places no restrictions on the number of imported function calls made in the same block of code without intervening time advancement. Implementations must support the ability to transmit multiple messages in 0-time either by calling the same function or by calling multiple functions in the same time step.

### 5.6.2.3 Rules for DPI function call nesting

SCE-MI 2 compliant implementation must support two levels of nesting meaning that the HDL side can call an imported function or 0-time task that can call an exported function. Once the exported function returns, it can yield control back to the imported function or 0-time task. Supporting more than two levels of nesting is allowed by SystemVerilog DPI but considered undefined in SCE-MI 2 meaning it can result in undefined behavior.

Note: SCE-MI does not impose any restrictions on SCE-MI implementations supporting additional levels of nesting. An example for additional levels of nesting is when the exported function (called from an imported function) calls another imported function that calls another exported function establishing a call chain that is 4 levels deep.

#### 5.6.2.4 DPI utility functions supported by SCE-MI 2

*DPI defines a small set of functions to help programmers work with DPI context tasks and functions. The term scope is used in the task or function names for consistency with other SystemVerilog terminology. The terms scope and context are equivalent for DPI tasks and functions.*

*There are functions that allow the user to retrieve and manipulate the current operational scope. There are also functions to associate an opaque user data pointer with an HDL scope. This pointer can then later be retrieved when an imported DPI function is called from that scope.*

SCE-MI 2 supports two types of DPI Utility functions, those that involve manipulation of scope (to be called scope-related DPI utility Functions) and additional helper functions that can be used for bit vector manipulation, version query, etc.

The scope-related DPI utility functions are:

```
svScope svGetScope(void)
svScope svSetScope(const svScope scope)
void svPutUserData(const svScope scope, void *userKey, void *userData)
void *svGetUserData(const svScope scope, void *userKey)
const char *svGetNameFromScope(const svScope scope)
svScope svGetScopeFromName(const char *scopeName)
int svGetCallerInfo(char **fileName, int *lineNumber)
```

The helper DPI utility functions are:

```
const char *svDpiVersion(void)
svBit svGetBitselBit(const svBitVecVal *s, int i)
void svPutBitselBit(svBitVecVal *d, int i, svBit s)
void svGetPartselBit(svBitVecVal *d, const svBitVecVal *s, int i, int w)
void svPutPartselBit(svBitVecVal *d, const svBitVecVal s, int i, int w)
```

Note: There is a restriction on when scope related functions can be called. They cannot be called at any time in the simulation prior to completion of design elaboration as it is possible that not all scopes are defined before this point. Helper utility functions can be called at any time.

### 5.6.3 SV-Connect – Using DPI with SystemVerilog HVL

This section presents the formal requirements of the function based SV-Connect interface with SystemVerilog HVL testbenches.

#### 5.6.3.1 Rules for DPI functions on the SystemVerilog HVL-side

Each DPI imported function declared on the HDL-side requires a DPI exported function implementation on the SystemVerilog HVL-side. Similarly, each DPI imported function declared on the SystemVerilog HVL-side requires a DPI exported function implementation on the HDL-side. The combination of the imported function and the exported function which together are two parts of a single data path is referred to as *paired functions*.

The rules for SystemVerilog testbench DPI calls are meant to guarantee a one-to-one correspondence between the two paired functions so that when one is parsed, the other can be inferred. This means that the return type, name, and function arguments of both of the paired functions can be ascertained from examining just one of them. This is critical for allowing auto-generation of the C layer.

##### 5.6.3.1.1 Naming convention

The default naming convention is for every HVL-side DPI function name is to have a prefix placed in front of the name of its paired HDL-side function name. The text of the prefix string can be specified by the user, however, absent such a specification, the default prefix shall be “svc\_”.

For example, assuming a user specified prefix of “svc\_”, the function `xyz_master_configure()` on the HDL-side is paired with `svc_xyz_master_configure()` on the HVL-side.

Or, assuming the default prefix of `svc`, the function `XyzMasterConfigure()` on the HDL-side is paired with `svcXyzMasterConfigure()` on the HVL-side.

Vendor implementations must provide a mechanism to override the default prefix shown above so that the user may specify an alternate prefix for the HVL-side function when doing auto-generation of the C layer. Whatever prefix is chosen must be consistently used for all functions that are intended to be paired in any given automatically generated C layer (see section 5.6.3.2.1 Example of inbound (HVL to HDL) function pair)

#### 5.6.3.1.2 **Return type**

The return types of the HVL-side and HDL-side paired functions shall match.

#### 5.6.3.1.3 **Function arguments**

The function arguments of the HVL-side and HDL-side paired functions are the same, and in the same order, except that the HVL-side function must have one additional argument – SystemVerilog type `chandle` – as its first argument.

#### 5.6.3.1.4 **Functions only**

SV-Connect is defined for functions only. The equivalent of time consuming tasks can be accomplished with function calls in the inbound (HVL to HDL) direction to initiate a time consuming operation on the HDL side followed later by function calls in the outbound (HDL to HVL) direction to announce completion of that time consuming operation.

This rule is consistent with existing SCE-MI DPI usage as well. To be SCE-MI compliant, SV-Connect HDL-side DPI calls should observe all HDL-side rules as stated in section 5.6.2 The DPI SystemVerilog layer.

### 5.6.3.2 SV-Connect examples

#### 5.6.3.2.1 **Example of inbound (HVL to HDL) function pair**

```
HDL-side:    export "DPI-C" function xyz_master_configure;
              function bit xyz_master_configure;
                input int unsigned val;
                config_reg = val;
                if (bus_active) return 1;
                else return 0;
              endfunction

HVL-side:    import "DPI-C" context function bit svc_xyz_master_configure (
              input chandle scope,
              input int unsigned val );
```

#### 5.6.3.2.2 **Example of outbound (HDL to HVL) function pair**

```
HDL-side:    import "DPI-C" context function bit xyz_master_interrupt (
              input int unsigned icode );

HVL-side:    export "DPI-C" function svc_xyz_master_interrupt;
              function void svc_xyz_master_interrupt;
                input chandle scope;
                input int unsigned icode;
                XYZMaster_Proxy me = XYZMaster_Proxy::userData[scope];
                me.interrupt( icode );
              endfunction
```

### 5.6.3.3 SystemVerilog HVL-side DPI package rules

All SystemVerilog HVL-side DPI imported function declarations and exported DPI function implementations shall be inside packages.

Each package that contains DPI functions that pair with HDL-side DPI functions shall declare a special imported DPI function used to set package scope within the C layer using the following construction of its name:

```
import "DPI-C" context function void svcSetScope_<package name>();
```

Again, note use of default `svc` prefix which can be overridden with user-specified prefix as mentioned in section **5.6.3.1.1 Naming convention**.

This `svcSetScope_<package name>()` imported DPI function is void and has no arguments. It must be called before any outbound (HDL-side to HVL-side) calls to any of that package's DPI exported functions are made. The C layer must provide the implementation of this imported function. It gets and stores within the C layer the calling scope of the `svcSetScope_<package name>()` imported DPI function which is the scope of the package. Whenever an outbound call to the package's DPI exported functions is made, this package scope shall be used to set the scope of the exported function call.

#### 5.6.3.4 Binding and scope handling

The HVL-side testbench includes the destination scope of exported DPI functions on the HDL-side that it calls as the first argument of its paired imported functions. Scopes in SystemVerilog are stored as type `chandle` which is the DPI equivalent of the C `void *` type. In C, scopes returned and input to DPI utility functions such as `svGetScope()` are of type `svScope` (part of SystemVerilog LRM for DPI interface) which is a typedef of `void *`.

To assist in mapping DPI scopes to path names and vice versa SV-Connect utilizes direct calling of the standard SystemVerilog DPI C utility functions as imported DPI functions,

```
svScope svGetScopeFromName( const char *name );  
const char *svGetNameFromScope( svScope scope );
```

NOTE: Because these two functions are automatically provided by any SystemVerilog compliant simulator that supports the DPI standard and they have ANSI C (a.k.a. `extern "C"`) symbol linkage, they can be directly declared in SV-HVL code as `import "DPI-C" functions`. This can be quite useful for determining scope handles at initialization time that can be subsequently and repeatedly passed to the user defined API functions.

A package `svdpi.sv` shall be provided by the EDA tool which declares `svGetScopeFromName()` and `svGetNameFromScope()` as `import "DPI-C" functions`. So, HVL packages implementing SV-Connect transactors can import this package as follows:

```
import svdpi::*;
```

## 5.7 Time access

### 5.7.1.1 Time access from the C side

To access current simulation time on the C side two calls from SystemVerilog standard VPI interface API can be used to get current time and global precision. In any SCE-MI 2 implementation that already supports VPI, no additional work is needed on the part of the implementation to support time access. In SCE-MI 2 function and pipe feature sets, the two calls must be implemented *at least as described below at a minimum*, to provide time access capability.

The `vpi_get_time()` call can be used to obtain current time expressed in simulation units:

```
void vpi_get_time( vpiHandle obj, s_vpi_time *time_p );
```

Specifically for SCE-MI 2 compliance the `vpi_get_time()` call does not need to be implemented in its entirety. The only minimum requirement is that `vpi_get_time()` accepts a NULL value for the `obj` argument and a valid pointer to an `s_vpi_time` structure for the `time_p` argument.

The `vpi_get()` call can be used to obtain the global precision units in which current time is expressed:

```
int vpi_get( int prop, vpiHandle obj );
```

Specifically for SCE-MI 2 compliance the `vpi_get()` call does not need to be implemented in its entirety. The only minimum requirement is that `vpi_get()` accepts a value of `vpiTimePrecision` for the `prop` argument and a value of `NULL` for the `obj` argument.

Given the ability to obtain current time in simulation units and the precision of those simulation units, one can easily derive current time expressed in any units desired.

Here is an example of a small “reference code library” that can return current time in NS in any environment that supports the two VPI calls in the manner described above:

```
static uint64_t timescaleFactorForNs;
static bool useMultiplyForNs;

static uint64_t precisionConverterForNs[] = {
    1000000000LL, // 0    1 s
    100000000LL, // -1  100 ms
    10000000LL,  // -2  10 ms
    1000000LL,   // -3  1 ms
    100000LL,    // -4  100 us
    10000LL,     // -5  10 us
    1000LL,      // -6  1 us
    100LL,       // -7  100 ns
    10LL,        // -8  10 ns
    1LL,         // -9  1 ns
    10LL,        // -10 100 ps
    100LL,       // -11 10 ps
    1000LL,      // -12 1 ps
    10000LL,     // -13 100 fs
    100000LL,   // -14 10 fs
    1000000LL   // -15 1 fs
};

//-----
// Call this at init time.

void initialize(){
    timescaleFactorForNs =
        precisionConverterForNs[ -vpi_get(vpiTimePrecision,NULL) ];
    useMultiplyForNs = vpi_get(vpiTimePrecision,NULL) >= -9 ? true : false;
}

//-----
// Call this whenever you want time in NS

uint64_t timeInNs() const {
    static s_vpi_time vtime = { vpiSimTime, 0, 0, 0.0 };

    vpi_get_time( NULL, &vtime );
    uint64_t vtime64 = (((uint64_t)vtime.high) << 32) | vtime.low;

    useMultiplyForNs == true ?
        vtime64 * timescaleFactorForNs :
        vtime64 / timescaleFactorForNs ;
}

```

In an emulation environment it will be up to the implementer's infrastructure to keep the C side's internal notion of time properly updated with the emulator's notion.

For streaming threads, the current time access would only be guaranteed at "synchronization points" defined by flushes of DPI pipes.

Note: Support for this is required by both the function call interface and the pipes-based interface.

## 5.8 Pipes-based interface: transaction pipes

### 5.8.1 SCE-MI 2 pipes compliance

Implementation providers stating compliance with SCE-MI pipes-based interface must provide at least one implementation of C-side Pipes blocking semantics compliant with "Transaction Pipes API: Blocking, Thread-Aware Interface" specification as defined in section 5.8.4.

SCE-MI 2 C-side Pipes blocking semantics are intended to be implemented using a thread aware application to be determined by the EDA vendor or the end user. This implies that C-side Pipes blocking calls may be implemented by an EDA vendor using their threaded application of choice, or by an end user using their threaded application of choice. SCE-MI 2 defines the interface and the semantics of SCE-MI 2 C-side Transaction Pipes API: blocking, Thread-Aware interface in section 5.8.4.

SCE-MI 2 requires that EDA vendors implementing C-side Pipes blocking interface will allow end users implementing their C-side Pipes blocking interface to use their C-side Pipes blocking implementation together with the EDA vendor C-side Pipes non-blocking interface.

The above specification does not define which threaded applications EDA vendors should use for implementing SCE-MI 2 C-side Pipes blocking interface. This decision is left to the EDA vendor.

The above specification requires the EDA vendor to allow end users to use the EDA vendor provided Pipes C-side non-blocking interface for implementing their thread-aware blocking interface.

The above specification allows using both end-user C-side Pipes blocking interface and EDA vendor C-side Pipes non-blocking interfaces together if end users choose to do so.

The mechanism by which EDA vendor allows end users to choose between their own implementation of Pipes C-side blocking interface and EDA vendor provided C-side Pipes blocking interface is left to the EDA vendor.

### 5.8.2 Transaction pipes

Transaction pipes are implemented using an API. On the C-side, the transaction pipes API consists of ANSI C functions. On the HDL side the API consists of functions and tasks defined in a SystemVerilog *interface*.

There is also an API to access pipes from SystemVerilog HVL testbenches. It has semantics very similar to the C-side API however, it is a SystemVerilog class based API which is described in more detail in section 5.8.2.3.

C++ HVL testbenches can be used also. C++ class based API is described in section 5.8.2.4

#### 5.8.2.1 C-Side transaction pipes API

The C-side transaction pipes API consists entirely of the following set of function declarations:

Configuration, query functions:

```

void *scemi_pipe_c_handle(          // return: pipe handle
    const char *endpoint_path ); // input: path to HDL endpoint instance

svBit scemi_pipe_set_eom_auto_flush(
    void *pipe_handle, // input: pipe handle
    svBit enabled ); // input: 1=enable autoflush; 0=disable autoflush

typedef void (*scemi_pipe_notify_callback)(
    void *context ); // input: C model context

typedef void *scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle;
// Handle type denoting registered notify callback.

scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback(
    void *pipe_handle, // input: pipe handle
    scemi_pipe_notify_callback notify_callback,
    // input: notify callback function
    void *notify_context, // input: notify context
    int callback_threshold); // input: threshold for notify callback function

void scemi_pipe_clear_notify_callback(
    scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle notify_callback_handle );
// input: notify callback handle

void *scemi_pipe_get_notify_context( //return: notify context object pointer
    scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle notify_callback_handle);
// input: notify handle

void scemi_pipe_put_user_data(
    void *pipe_handle, // input: pipe handle
    void *user_key, // input: user key
    void *user_data); // input: user data

void *scemi_pipe_get_user_data(
    void *pipe_handle, // input: pipe handle
    void *user_key); // input: user key

int scemi_pipe_get_bytes_per_element( // return: bytes per element
    void *pipe_handle ); // input: pipe handle

svBit scemi_pipe_get_direction(//return: 1 for input pipe, 0 for output pipe
    void *pipe_handle ); // input: pipe handle

int scemi_pipe_get_depth( // return: current depth (in elements) of the pipe
    void *pipe_handle ); // input: pipe handle

```

**Input pipe interface:**

```

void scemi_pipe_c_send(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be written
    const svBitVecVal *data,    // input: data
    svBit eom );              // input: end-of-message marker flag

void scemi_pipe_c_send_bytes(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be written
    const char *data,          // input: data
    svBit eom );              // input: end-of-message marker flag

void scemi_pipe_c_flush(
    void *pipe_handle );       // input: pipe handle

int scemi_pipe_c_try_send(     // return: #requested elements
                               //         that are actually sent
    void *pipe_handle,         // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,           // input: byte offset into data, below
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be sent
    const svBitVecVal *data,   // input: data
    svBit eom );              // input: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_send_bytes( // return: #requested elements
                                   //         that are actually sent
    void *pipe_handle,         // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,           // input: byte offset into data, below
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be sent
    const char *data,          // input: data
    svBit eom );              // input: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_flush(     // return: indication of flush success
    void *pipe_handle );       // input: pipe handle

int scemi_pipe_c_can_send(     // return: #elements that can be sent
    void *pipe_handle );       // input: pipe handle

```

Output pipe interface:

```

void scemi_pipe_c_receive(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be read
    int *num_elements_valid,    // output: #elements that are valid
    svBitVecVal *data,         // output: data
    svBit *eom );              // output: end-of-message marker flag

void scemi_pipe_c_receive_bytes(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be read
    int *num_elements_valid,    // output: #elements that are valid
    char *data,                 // output: data
    svbit *eom );              // output: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_receive( // return: #requested elements
                               //         that are actually received
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,           // input: byte offset into data, below
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be read
    svBitVecVal *data,         // output: data
    svBit *eom );              // output: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_receive_bytes( // return: #requested elements
                                       //         that are actually received
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,           // input: byte offset into data, below
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be read
    char *data,                 // output: data
    svBit *eom );              // output: end-of-message marker flag

svBit scemi_pipe_c_in_flush_state( // return: whether pipe is in Flush state
    void *pipe_handle );        // input: pipe handle

int scemi_pipe_c_can_receive( // return: #elements that can be received
    void *pipe_handle );        // input: pipe handle

```

### 5.8.2.2 HDL-side API

The HDL-side API is fully defined by the following two SystemVerilog interface declarations.

Input pipe interface:

```

interface scemi_input_pipe();
    parameter BYTES_PER_ELEMENT = 1;
    parameter PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS = 1;
    parameter BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS = <implementation specified>;
    parameter VISIBILITY_MODE = 0;          // must be set to either 1 or 2
                                           // set to 1 for immediate visibility
                                           // set to 2 for deferred visibility

    parameter NOTIFICATION_THRESHOLD = BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS;
                                           // Can have a value = 1 or
                                           // BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS

    localparam PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS
        = PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS * BYTES_PER_ELEMENT * 8;

    task receive(
        input  int num_elements,           // input: #elements to be read
        output int num_elements_valid,    // output: #elements that are valid
        output bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] data, // output: data
        output bit eom,                   // output: end-of-message marker flag
        input  int sync_control = IS_CLOCKED_INTF );
                                           // input: Sync control kind:
                                           // 0 - block asynchronously
                                           // 1 - sync on clock posedge
                                           // 2 - sync on clock negedge
        <implementation goes here>
    endtask

    function int try_receive( // return: #requested elements
                            //         that are actually received
        input  int byte_offset, // input: byte_offset into data, below
        input  int num_elements, // input: #elements to be read
        output bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] data, // output: data
        output bit eom ); // output: end-of-message marker flag
        <implementation goes here>
    endfunction

    function int can_receive(); // return: #elements that can be received
        <implementation goes here>
    endfunction

    modport receive_if( import receive, try_receive, can_receive );
endinterface

```

Output pipe interface:

```

interface scemi_output_pipe();
  parameter BYTES_PER_ELEMENT = 1;
  parameter PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS = 1;
  parameter BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS = <implementation specified>;
  parameter VISIBILITY_MODE = 0; // must be set to either 1 or 2
                                  // set to 1 for immediate visibility
                                  // set to 2 for deferred visibility
  parameter NOTIFICATION_THRESHOLD = BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS;
                                  // Can have a value = 1 or
                                  // BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS

  localparam PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS = PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS * BYTES_PER_ELEMENT * 8;

  task send(
    input int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be written
    input bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] data, // input: data
    input bit eom,                  // input: end-of-message marker flag
    input int sync_control = IS_CLOCKED_INTF );
                                  // input: Sync control kind:
                                  // 0 - block asynchronously
                                  // 1 - sync on clock posedge
                                  // 2 - sync on clock negedge

    <implementation goes here>
  endtask

  task flush (
    input int sync_control = IS_CLOCKED_INTF );
                                  // input: Sync control kind:
                                  // 0 - block asynchronously
                                  // 1 - sync on clock posedge
                                  // 2 - sync on clock negedge

    <implementation goes here>
  endtask

  function int try_send( // return: #requested elements
                        //         that are actually sent
    input int byte_offset, // input: byte_offset into data, below
    input int num_elements, // input: #elements to be sent
    input bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] data, // input: data
    input bit eom ); // input: end-of-message marker flag
    <implementation goes here>
  endfunction

  function int try_flush(); // return: 1 if pipe is successfully flushed
                            //         i.e. an empty pipe
    <implementation goes here>
  endfunction

  function int can_send(); // return: #elements that can be sent
    <implementation goes here>
  endfunction

  modport send_if( import send, flush, try_send, can_send );
endinterface

```

### 5.8.2.3 SystemVerilog HVL-side transaction pipes API

The SystemVerilog HVL-side transaction pipes API follows the C-side API very closely except that all the API functions are encapsulated as methods of a SystemVerilog class which is itself defined in a package.

The entire SystemVerilog HVL-side API package is listed below. The functions and tasks in the class definitions are declared as `extern`. Their contents are defined by the implementer of the standard API.

There is a common base class `scemi_pipe` which contains all functions common to both input and output pipes. For send interfaces, class `scemi_dynamic_input_pipe` extends class `scemi_pipe` with send-related functions to transport dynamic byte arrays and class `scemi_static_input_pipe` further extends class `scemi_dynamic_input_pipe` with send-related functions to transport packed bit vectors. For receive interfaces, class `scemi_dynamic_output_pipe` extends class `scemi_pipe` with receive-related functions to transport dynamic byte arrays and class `scemi_static_output_pipe` further extends class `scemi_dynamic_output_pipe` with receive-related functions to transport packed bit vectors.

The SCE-MI SystemVerilog HVL-side API package given below should be contained in a file called `scemi_pipes_pkg.sv`.

```

// _____
// package scemi_pipes_pkg \_____
//
// This package contains the SystemVerilog HVL-side API class definition
// for SCE-MI 2 pipes.
//-----

package scemi_pipes_pkg; // {

`ifndef SCEMI_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES
`define SCEMI_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES 512
`endif

// _____
// class scemi_pipe_notify_callback \_____
//
// This is a small helper class to assist in the handling of notify callbacks
// whenever the HVL side of the pipe is notified as per the semantics of
// the pipe state diagrams.
//
// SV notify callbacks work very similarly to C API notify callbacks.
//
// The base class version of this notify callback function does nothing.
// However, because it is virtual, it can be overridden by any application
// callback handler class derived from this class scemi_pipe_notify_callback.
//
// A callback object then can be registered with the pipe API using
// the scemi_pipe::set_notify_callback() shown in the class scemi_pipe
// API below.
//-----

class scemi_pipe_notify_callback; // {

    virtual function void notify();
        // Do nothing.
    endfunction

endclass // }

// _____
// class scemi_pipe \_____
//
// Common API functions.
//-----

class scemi_pipe; // {

    //-----
    // Constructor
    //
    // This is the constructor for the pipes API class. It is passed the
    // pathname to the HDL-side endpoint of the pipe instance to which it
    // should bind.
    //-----

    extern function new(
        input string hdl_path ); // input: Path to HDL-side pipe instance.

    //-----
    // ::get_direction()
    // ::get_depth()
    // ::bytes_per_element()

```

```

//
// These functions return the direction, depth, and bytes-per-element
// respectively of this pipe instance. These parameters are statically
// determined by parameterizations of the HDL side interface of the pipe.
//-----

extern function bit get_direction();
    // return: 1 for input pipe, 0 for output pipe

extern function int get_depth();
    // return: current depth (in elements) of the pipe

extern function int get_bytes_per_element(); // return: bytes-per-element

//-----
// ::set_eom_auto_flush()
//
// This function configures the pipe to either enable or disable
// eom auto-flush mode.
//-----

extern function bit set_eom_auto_flush(
    // return: Current eom auto-flush configuration
    input bit enable ); // input: 1 to enable / 0 to disable

//-----
// ::in_flush_state()
//-----

extern function bit in_flush_state();
    // return: 0 if pipe is not in flush state,
    //         1 if pipe is in flush state.

//-----
// ::set_notify_callback()
// ::clear_notify_callback()
//
// Register(deregister) a notify callback object.
//-----

extern function void
    set_notify_callback(
        scemi_pipe_notify_callback notify_callback,
        // input: notify callback object
        int callback_threshold = 0 );
    // input: threshold for notify callback

extern function void
    clear_notify_callback( scemi_pipe_notify_callback notify_callback );

endclass // }

//
// _____ \
// class scemi_dynamic_input_pipe \
//
// Input pipe API functions. This variation of input pipe takes dynamic byte
// array payload arguments to the ::send() and ::try_send() functions.
//-----

class scemi_dynamic_input_pipe extends scemi_pipe; // {

    extern function new(
        input string hdl_path ); // input: Path to HDL-side pipe instance.

```

```

//-----
// ::send_bytes()
//
// This is the basic blocking send function for a transaction input pipe.
// The passed in data is sent to the pipe. If necessary the calling thread
// is suspended until there is room in the pipe.
//
// The data payload is represented as a dynamic array of bytes.
//
// The eom argument is a flag which is used for the user specified
// end-of-message (eom) indication. It can be used for example to mark the
// end of a frame containing a sequence of transactions.
//-----

extern task send_bytes(
    input int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be written
    const ref byte unsigned data[], // input: data payload
    input bit eom );                // input: end-of-message marker flag

//-----
// ::flush()
//
// Flush pipe data. This function will cause the calling thread to suspend
// until the last element sent to the pipe is confirmed to have been
// received on the HDL side.
//-----

extern task flush();

//-----
// ::try_send_bytes()
//
// This is the basic non-blocking send function for a transaction
// input pipe.
//
// The data payload is represented as a dynamic array of bytes.
//
// The number of elements actually sent is returned. It is possible
// that there is not enough room in the pipe for the entire set of
// requested elements to be sent. In this case the number of elements
// returned will be less than the number requested to be sent, and
// the application may wish continue to retry the send at future points
// in time until all the desired elements are sent. It is possible for
// it to do so without changing the input payload reference by simply
// bumping the byte_offset argument in each new call attempt by the amount
// successfully sent in the previous call.
//-----

extern function int try_send_bytes( // return: number of elements
                                   //         actually sent
    input int byte_offset,          // input: byte offset within data array
    input int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be sent
    const ref byte unsigned data[], // input: data payload
    input bit eom );               // input: end-of-message marker flag

//-----
// ::try_flush()
//
// This is the basic non-blocking flush function for a transaction
// input pipe. A flush is successful if the last element sent to the
// pipe is confirmed to have been received on the HDL side.
//-----

```

```

extern function bit try_flush();
    // return: 0 if flush is not successful, 1 if flush is successful

//-----
// ::can_send()
//
// This function returns the maximum number of elements that would
// currently fit in the pipe. This number could be passed immediately to a
// call to any blocking send function and it would be guaranteed to return
// immediately without requiring a block. Similarly if it is passed
// immediately to a call to any non-blocking send function it would be
// guaranteed to return the same number of elements requested indicating
// a successful send of that full number of elements.
//-----

extern function int can_send();
    // return: #elements that would fit in the pipe

endclass // }

//
// -----
// class scemi_dynamic_output_pipe \
//
// Output pipe API functions. This variation of output pipe takes dynamic byte
// array payload arguments to the ::receive() and ::try_receive() functions.
//-----

class scemi_dynamic_output_pipe extends scemi_pipe; // {

    extern function new(
        input string hdl_path ); // input: Path to HDL-side pipe instance.

//-----
// ::receive_bytes()
//
// This is the basic blocking receive function for a transaction
// output pipe.
//
// The data payload is represented as a dynamic array of bytes.
//
// The eom argument for this call is an output argument. It is set to the
// same setting of the flag passed on the ::send() call by the producer
// endpoint of the pipe as described in the standard. Thus it can be used
// by the caller to query whether the current read is one for which an eom
// was specified when the data was sent on the producer endpoint.
//-----

extern task receive_bytes(
    input int num_elements,           // input: #elements to be read
    output int num_elements_valid,    // output: #elements that are valid
    ref byte unsigned data[],        // output: data payload
    output bit eom );                // output: end-of-message marker flag

//-----
// ::try_receive_bytes()
//
// This is the basic non-blocking receive function for a transaction
// output pipe.
//
// The data payload is represented as a dynamic array of bytes.
//
// The number of elements actually received is returned. It is possible

```

```

// there are not enough elements in the pipe to satisfy the request.
// In this case the number of elements returned will be less than the
// number requested to be received, and the application may wish continue
// to retry the receive at future points in time until all the desired
// elements are received. It is possible for it to do so without changing
// the output payload reference by simply bumping the byte_offset argument
// in each new call attempt by the amount successfully received in the
// previous call.
//-----

extern function int try_receive_bytes(
    // return: # of elements actually received
    input int byte_offset, // input: byte offset within data array
    input int num_elements, // input: #elements to be received
    ref byte unsigned data[], // output: data payload
    output bit eom ); // output: end-of-message marker flag

//-----
// ::can_receive()
//
// This function returns the maximum number of elements are currently
// visible in the pipe. This number could be passed immediately to a
// call to any blocking receive() function and it would be guaranteed to
// return immediately without requiring a block. Similarly if it is passed
// immediately to a call to any non-blocking receive function it would be
// guaranteed to return the same number of elements requested indicating
// a successful receive of that full number of elements.
//-----

extern function int can_receive(); // return: #elements visible in the pipe

endclass // }

//
// _____ \
//
// Input pipe API functions. This variation of input pipe takes static bit
// vector payload arguments to the ::send() and ::try_send() functions.
//-----

class scemi_static_input_pipe #( int STATIC_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES =
    `SCEMI_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES ) extends scemi_dynamic_input_pipe; // {

extern function new(
    input string hdl_path ); // input: Path to HDL-side pipe instance.

//-----
// ::send_bits()
//
// This is the basic blocking send function for a transaction input pipe.
// The passed in data is sent to the pipe. If necessary the calling thread
// is suspended until there is room in the pipe.
//
// The data payload is represented as a statically sized bit vector.
//
// The eom argument is a flag which is used for the user specified
// end-of-message (eom) indication. It can be used for example to mark the
// end of a frame containing a sequence of transactions.
//-----

extern task send_bits(
    input int num_elements, // input: #elements to be written
    input bit [STATIC_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES*8-1:0] data,

```

```

        input bit eom );          // input: data payload
                                // input: end-of-message marker flag

//-----
// ::try_send_bits()
//
// This is the basic non-blocking send function for a transaction
// input pipe.
//
// The data payload is represented as a statically sized bit vector.
//
// The number of elements actually sent is returned. It is possible
// that there is not enough room in the pipe for the entire set of
// requested elements to be sent. In this case the number of elements
// returned will be less than the number requested to be sent, and
// the application may wish continue to retry the send at future points
// in time until all the desired elements are sent. It is possible for
// it to do so without changing the input payload reference by simply
// bumping the byte_offset argument in each new call attempt by the amount
// successfully sent in the previous call.
//-----

extern function int try_send_bits(
sent                                // return: number of elements actually
    input int byte_offset,          // input: byte offset within data array
    input int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be sent
    input bit [STATIC_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES*8-1:0] data,
                                // input: data payload
    input bit eom );              // input: end-of-message marker flag
endclass // }

//
// _____
// class scemi_static_output_pipe \_____
//
// Output pipe API functions. This variation of output pipe takes static bit
// vector payload arguments to the ::receive() and ::try_receive() functions.
//-----

class scemi_static_output_pipe #( int STATIC_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES =
`SCEMI_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES )
    extends scemi_dynamic_output_pipe; // {

extern function new(
    input string hdl_path ); // input: Path to HDL-side pipe instance.

//-----
// ::receive_bits()
//
// This is the basic blocking receive functions for a transaction
// output pipe.
//
// The data payload is represented as a statically sized bit vector.
//
// The eom argument for this call is an output argument. It is set to the
// same setting of the flag passed on the ::send() call by the producer
// endpoint of the pipe as described in the standard. Thus it can be used
// by the caller to query whether the current read is one for which an eom
// was specified when the data was sent on the producer endpoint.
//-----

extern task receive_bits(
    input int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be read

```

```

        output int num_elements_valid, // output: #elements that are valid
        output bit [STATIC_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES*8-1:0] data,
                                     // output: data payload
        output bit eom );              // output: end-of-message marker flag

//-----
// ::try_receive_bits()
//
// These are the basic non-blocking receive functions for a transaction
// output pipe.
//
// The data payload is represented as a statically sized bit vector.
//
// The number of elements actually received is returned. It is possible
// there are not enough elements in the pipe to satisfy the request.
// In this case the number of elements returned will be less than the
// number requested to be received, and the application may wish continue
// to retry the receive at future points in time until all the desired
// elements are received. It is possible for it to do so without changing
// the output payload reference by simply bumping the byte_offset argument
// in each new call attempt by the amount successfully received in the
// previous call.
//-----

extern function int try_receive_bits(
    input int byte_offset, // return: # of elements actually received
    input int num_elements, // input: byte offset within data array
    output bit [STATIC_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES*8-1:0] data,
    output bit eom );      // input: #elements to be received
                           // output: data payload
                           // output: end-of-message marker flag
endclass // }

endpackage : scemi_pipes_pkg // }

```

Note the following points:

- Notably missing are the SystemVerilog HVL-side API equivalents of the following calls found in the C API:

```
scemi_pipe_c_handle()
```

- This is not needed because its equivalent purpose, which is to bind the HVL-side to the HDL-side endpoint of the pipe, is handled by the `::new()` constructor in the API class. As with the C API function, `scemi_pipe_c_handle()`, the `::new()` constructor takes the pathname to the HDL-side pipe interface endpoint to establish the binding.

```
scemi_pipe_set_notify_context()
scemi_pipe_get_notify_context()
scemi_pipe_set_user_data()
scemi_pipe_get_user_data()
```

- These are not needed because they were originally intended to accommodate any type of threading system that might be needed for a C testbench modeling environment in order to adapt the *thread neutral* API to the *thread aware* blocking API. That is not necessary for the SystemVerilog HVL-side API since SystemVerilog has its own implied threading system.
- There is a need for notify callback mechanism to allow for a use model where the HVL side endpoint can feed or unload the pipe completely inside the notify callback without the requirement for any thread synchronization. The C/SystemC API will already support this capability with the above calls. However, for the SV API, this is handled with a notify callback object function called class `scemi_pipe_notify_callback` described below.

- The remaining calls have identical semantics to the C API therefore no further explanation is needed above what is seen in the sections describing the C API.
- For input and output pipes there are two variations of each: dynamic and static. The main difference is that classes `scemi_dynamic_input_pipe` and `scemi_dynamic_output_pipe` take dynamic byte array data payload arguments, whereas classes `scemi_static_input_pipe` and `scemi_static_output_pipe` take static bit vector data payload arguments.

An end user wishing to use the either of the static variations of the pipes will also be able to use the send and receive functions with dynamic byte payloads since the static pipe variants derive from the dynamic variants. End users wishing to only use the dynamic pipes can use those classes directly.

- For classes `scemi_dynamic_input_pipe` and `scemi_dynamic_output_pipe` all data payload arguments in the `::send_bytes()`, `::receive_bytes()`, `::try_send_bytes()`, and `::try_receive_bytes()` methods are references (ref's) to open arrays of unsigned byte. This gives the maximum flexibility in terms of generalizing the API to leave payload sizes unspecified, yet use ref's to facilitate the most efficient data payload transfers that minimize the need for memory-to-memory copying.
- For classes `scemi_static_input_pipe` and `scemi_static_output_pipe` all data payload arguments in the `::send_bits()`, `::receive_bits()`, `::try_send_bits()`, and `::try_receive_bits()` methods are fixed size packed bit vectors. This provides an alternative use model that may need to work with packed bit vectors rather than unsigned byte arrays. This use model does have the restriction that the payload sizes cannot exceed the `STATIC_PAYLOAD_MAX_BYTES` parameter specified in the class definition.
- For classes `scemi_dynamic_input_pipe` and `scemi_dynamic_output_pipe` because data payload arguments in the `::send_bytes()`, `::receive_bytes()`, `::try_send_bytes()`, and `::try_receive_bytes()` methods are references (ref's) to open arrays of unsigned byte it is necessary to clearly define a position mapping between a byte at a given index into the HVL-side array and its corresponding slice position in the HDL-side data payload bit vector. Assuming an HVL-side byte index `i` this mapping is specified as follows:

HVL-side data[`i`] maps to HDL-side data[`i*8+7 : i*8`]

If data shaping is deployed the ordering above will still be followed but will be mapped out over multiple pipe calls in either direction.

The class `scemi_pipe_notify_callback` has a virtual function that does nothing. However, it can be overridden if an application wants to be notified at notification points indicated on the pipe state diagram. Implementations of this function then can be used to service the pipe and allow for an HVL-side callback based use model that does not require thread synchronization.

To take advantage of this capability, the application can register callback objects by calling the pipe's `::set_notify_callback()` function and register notify callback objects by calling the pipe's `::clear_notify_callback()` function. This is consistent with the usage in the C API. See section 5.8.2.1 for more details.

#### 5.8.2.4 C++ HVL-side transaction pipes API

The C++ HVL-side transaction pipes API follows the C-side API very closely except that all the API functions are encapsulated as methods of a C++ class.

The entire C++ HVL-side API package is listed below. The functions are empty. Their contents are defined by the implementer of the standard API.

```

#include "svdpi.h"

/*
 * class scemi_pipe
 * This class defines members and methods that are used both in input pipe
 * and output pipe.
 */

class scemi_pipe {
    //-----
    // Constructor
    //-----

    scemi_pipe (
        const char *hdl_path); // input: Path to HDL endpoint instance

    //-----
    // Destructor
    //-----

    ~scemi_pipe();

    //-----
    // Common API functions
    //-----

    svBit get_direction(); // return: 1 for input pipe, 0 for output pipe

    int get_depth(); // return: current depth (in elements) of the pipe

    int get_bytes_per_element(); // return: bytes per element

    scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle set_notify_callback (
        // return: notify callback handle
        scemi_pipe_notify_callback notify_callback,
        // input: notify callback function
        void *notify_context, // input notify_context
        int callback_threshold = 0);
        // input: threshold for notify callback function

    void clear_notify_callback (
        scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle notify_callback_handle);
        // input: notify callback handle

    void *get_notify_context(
        scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle notify_callback_handle);
        // input: notify callback handle

    int put_user_data( // return: 0 if successful, 1 if not
        void *user_key, // input: user key
        void *user_data); // input: user data

    void *get_user_data( // return: user data
        void *user_key); // input: user key

    svBit set_eom_auto_flush(
        // return: current eom auto-flush configuration
        svBit enable); // input: 1=enable autoflush
        // 0=disable autoflush

};

/*
 * class scemi_input_pipe

```

```

*      This class defines methods that are used explicitly in input pipe
*/

class scemi_input_pipe: public scemi_pipe {
    //-----
    // Constructor
    //-----

    scemi_input_pipe(
        const char *hdl_path);    // input: Path to HDL endpoint instance

    //-----
    // Destructor
    //-----

    ~scemi_input_pipe();

    //-----
    // API functions for input pipe
    //-----

    void send(
        int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be written
        const svBitVecVal *data, // input: data
        svBit eom);              // input: end-of-message marker flag

    void flush();

    int try_send(                // return: #requested elements that are
                                //         actually sent
        int byte_offset,         // input: byte offset into data, below
        int num_elements,       // input: #elements to be sent
        const svBitVecVal *data, // input: data
        svBit eom);             // input: end-of-message marker flag

    int try_flush();             // return: indication of flush success

    int can_send();             // return: #elements that can be sent
};

/*
* class scemi_output_pipe
*      This class defines methods that are used explicitly in output pipe.
*/

class scemi_output_pipe: public scemi_pipe {
    //-----
    // Constructor
    //-----

    scemi_output_pipe(
        const char *hdl_path);    // input: Path to HDL endpoint instance

    //-----
    // Destructor
    //-----

    ~scemi_output_pipe();

    //-----
    // API functions for output pipe
    //-----

```

```

void receive(
    int num_elements,           // input: #elements to be read
    int *num_elements_valid,    // output: #elements that are valid
    svBitVecVal *data,         // output: data
    svBit eom);                // output: end-of-message marker flag

int try_receive(                // return: #requested elements
                                //         that are actually received
    int byte_offset,           // input: byte offset into data, below
    int num_elements,         // input: #elements to be read
    svBitVecVal *data,         // output: data
    svBit *eom);               // output: end-of-message marker flag

svBit pipe_in_flush_state();    // return: whether pipe is in Flush
state

int can_receive();              // return: #elements that can be
received
};

```

### 5.8.3 Pipe handles

On the HDL side, a pipe interface endpoint is defined using the SystemVerilog *interface* construct.

Once the HDL side has instantiated a pipe interface, all pipe operations in the HDL code are done by calling functions and tasks defined within that interface.

The path to this endpoint interface instance uniquely identifies a specific pipe endpoint in an HDL hierarchy to which the C-side can bind. Using this path, the C application can derive a handle that is used in all operations involving the C-side endpoint of the pipe by calling the following function:

```

void *scemi_pipe_c_handle(      // return: pipe handle
    const char *endpoint_path ); // input: path to HDL endpoint instance

```

Note: The pipe handle can be derived once at initialization time and reused many times without having to set scope each time and requiring the internal implementation to do a lookup based on the scope and the pipe ID to retrieve the internal data structure associated with a pipe on each and every pipe operation.

Once a pipe handle is derived, it can be used as the handle argument for all the function calls described in the following sections to perform operations to the C-side endpoint of the designated pipe.

The arguments consist of:

- `endpoint_path` – the hierarchical path to the interface instance representing the opposite HDL endpoint of the pipe

## 5.8.4 Transaction pipes API: blocking, thread-aware interface

### 5.8.4.1 Transaction input pipes – blocking operations

#### 5.8.4.1.1 Blocking input pipe access functions

The bold text in the *input pipe* SystemVerilog interface declaration below shows the *blocking receive* function:

```

interface scemi_input_pipe();
...

    task receive(
        input int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be read
        output int num_elements_valid, // output: #elements that are valid
        output bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] data, // output: data
        output bit eom,                  // output: end-of-message marker flag
        input int sync_control = IS_CLOCKED_INTF );
        // input: Sync control kind:
        // 0 - block asynchronously
        // 1 - sync on clock posedge
        // 2 - sync on clock negedge
        <implementer supplied implementation goes here>
    endtask

...

endinterface

```

The infrastructure will supply the implementation of this task - essentially it is a *built-in* function and its declaration can be placed in an implementation provided file that defines the interface which can be compiled as a separate unit along with all of the user's other modules, packages and interfaces.

The arguments consist of:

- `num_elements` - number of elements to be read on this receive operation - can vary from call to call which again, facilitates data shaping
- `num_elements_valid` - number of read elements that are valid - in the case of data shaping or flushing this can be less than the requested number of bytes read if the `eom` and/or flush comes at some residual number of elements that does not fill out an entire request (see section 5.8.4.3.4).
- `data` - a user supplied target bit vector to which the requested `num_elements` will be deposited
- `eom` - a flag that can serve as an end-of-message marker on a variably sized message transmitted as a sequence of transactions
- The `data` and `eom` arguments always have an output direction when receiving from a pipe.

On the C side endpoint of an *input pipe*, two *blocking send* functions that differ only in the data type used to represent the pipe payload are provided by the infrastructure. The blocking send function that accepts an `svBitVecVal` array is declared as follows:

```

void scemi_pipe_c_send(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be written
    const svBitVecVal *data,    // input: data
    svBit eom );               // input: end-of-message marker flag

```

The blocking send function that accepts a byte array is declared as follows:

```

void scemi_pipe_c_send_bytes(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be written
    const char *data,           // input: data
    svbit eom );               // input: end-of-message marker flag

```

Note the following properties:

- `pipe_handle` — the handle identifying the specific pipe as derived from the unique path to the HDL endpoint of the pipe (see section 5.8.3).
- `num_elements` — number of elements to be sent on this send operation - can vary from call to call which again, facilitates data shaping

- `data` — in the case of `scemi_pipe_c_send()` a user supplied bit vector from which the requested `num_elements` will be obtained and sent to the pipe; in the case of `scemi_pipe_c_send_bytes()` a user supplied byte array from which the requested `num_elements` will be obtained and sent to the pipe
- `eom` — a flag that can serve as an end-of-message marker on a variably sized message transmitted as a sequence of transactions

Bit ordering of the payload conveyed by the `data` argument is defined as follows. In the case of `scemi_pipe_c_send()` bit ordering is fixed by the SystemVerilog definition of `svBitVecVal`. In the case of `scemi_pipe_c_send_bytes()` the bits are ordered such that the byte with the lowest index in the byte array, i.e., `data[0]`, map to the least significant bits of the bit vector on the SystemVerilog side. In general, bits 7 down to 0 of `data[n]` map to bits  $8n + 7$  down to  $8n$  of the bit vector on the SystemVerilog side.

- The `data` and `eom` arguments always have an input direction when sending to a pipe.
- The `eom` flag is a user defined flag. Whatever value is passed to the send endpoint of the pipe will be received at the receive endpoint. This is useful for creating end-of-message markers in variable length messages or indicating flush points to the other end. In certain cases it can also be used to force flushes on a pipe (see description of autoflush in section 5.8.4.3.3).

On the C-side endpoint of an *input pipe*, the *flush* function provided by the infrastructure is declared as follows:

```
void scemi_pipe_c_flush(
    void *pipe_handle ) // input: pipe handle
```

Note the following properties:

- `pipe_handle` - the handle identifying the specific pipe as derived from the unique path to the HDL endpoint of the pipe (see section 5.8.3).

## 5.8.4.2 Transaction output pipes – blocking operations

### 5.8.4.2.1 Blocking output pipe access functions

The bold text in the *output pipe* SystemVerilog interface declaration below shows the *send* and *flush* functions which make up the API for the blocking operations of the HDL endpoint of an output pipe:

```
interface scemi_output_pipe();
    ...

    task send(
        input int num_elements, // input: #elements to be written
        input bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] data, // input: data
        input bit eom ); // input: end-of-message marker flag
        < implementer supplied implementation goes here>
    endtask

    task flush;
        < implementer supplied implementation goes here>
    endtask

    ...
endinterface
```

The infrastructure will supply the implementation of these tasks - essentially they are *built-in* functions and their declarations can be placed in an implementation provided file that defines the interface which can be compiled as a separate unit along with all of the user's other modules, packages and interfaces.

The arguments for the `send()` task consists of:

- `num_elements` - number of elements to be sent on this send operation - can vary from call to call which again, facilitates data shaping

- `data` - a user supplied bit vector from which the requested `num_elements` will be obtained and sent to the pipe
- `eom` - a flag that can serve as an end-of-message marker on a variably sized message transmitted as a sequence of transactions
- The `data` and `eom` arguments always have an input direction when sending to a pipe.

On the C side endpoint of an *output pipe*, two *blocking receive* functions that differ only in the data type used to represent the pipe payload are provided by the infrastructure. The blocking receive function that accepts an `svBitVecVal` array is declared as follows:

```
void scemi_pipe_c_receive(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be read
    int *num_elements_valid,    // output: #elements that are valid
    svBitVecVal *data,         // output: data
    svBit *eom );
```

The blocking receive function that accepts a byte array is declared as follows:

```
void scemi_pipe_c_receive_bytes(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be read
    int *num_elements_valid,    // output: #elements that are valid
    char *data,                 // output: data
    svbit *eom );
```

Note the following properties:

- `pipe_handle` - the handle identifying the specific pipe as derived from the unique path to the HDL endpoint of the pipe (see section 5.8.3).
- `num_elements` - number of elements to be read on this receive operation - can vary from call to call which again, facilitates data shaping
- `num_elements_valid` - number of read elements that are valid - in the case of data shaping this can be less than the requested number of bytes read if the `eom` and/or flush comes at some residual number of elements that does not fill out an entire request (see section 5.8.4.3.4).
- `data` - in the case of `scemi_pipe_c_receive()` a user supplied target bit vector to which the requested `num_elements` will be deposited; in the case of `scemi_pipe_c_receive_bytes()` a user supplied target byte array to which the requested `num_elements` will be deposited. It is the responsibility of the user to ensure the memory allocated for data is large enough to accept the requested data.
- `eom` - a flag that can serve as an end-of-message marker on a variably sized message transmitted as a sequence of transactions  
 Bit ordering of the payload conveyed by the data argument is defined as follows. In the case of `scemi_pipe_c_receive()` bit ordering is fixed by the SystemVerilog definition of `svBitVecVal`. In the case of `scemi_pipe_c_receive_bytes()` the bits are ordered such that the byte with the lowest index in the byte array, i.e., `data[0]`, map to the least significant bits of the bit vector on the SystemVerilog side. In general, bits 7 down to 0 of `data[n]` map to bits  $8n + 7$  down to  $8n$  of the bit vector on the SystemVerilog side.
- The `num_elements_valid`, `data` and `eom` arguments always have an output direction when receiving from a pipe.

### 5.8.4.3 Flush semantics

The SCE-MI transaction pipes API supports two types of flushing operations for pipes:

- explicit flushing
- implicit flushing

#### 5.8.4.3.1 **Explicit flushing of pipes**

When an *explicit flush* occurs on a pipe, it allows the producer of transactions previously sent on that pipe to suspend execution until all in-transit messages have been consumed by the consumer. The `scemi_pipe_c_flush()` call (see section 5.8.5.5.2) is used to flush transaction input pipes. The `flush()` task (see section 5.8.4.3.1) is used to flush transaction output pipes.

#### 5.8.4.3.2 **Implicit flushing of pipes**

Transaction pipes also support implicit flushing. If a pipe is enabled for implicit flushing, flushes will automatically occur on *end-of-message* (`eom`). This mode is called *autoflush*.

If a pipe has *autoflush* mode enabled, when a blocking send is performed on that pipe with the *end-of-message* (`eom`) flag set, the effect is as if an explicit blocking flush was combined with that send. The blocking send will not return until the consumer has fully received all messages in the pipe up to and including the `eom` tagged message being passed to it.

Producers of transactions to pipes can still call the explicit pipe flush functions at any time even on pipes that have autoflush mode enabled.

#### 5.8.4.3.3 **Enabling autoflush**

The following call lets an application indicate that *autoflush* mode is enabled or disabled for a pipe designated by a given handle. This configuration call is always initiated only from the C side for both input and output pipes.

For any given pipe on which this mode is enabled, a `scemi_pipe_c/hdl_send()` call with an `eom` value of 1 will have the same effect as if a `scemi_pipe_c/hdl_flush()` call was made following that data send call.

```
svBit scemi_pipe_set_eom_auto_flush(  
    void *pipe_handle, // input: pipe handle  
    svBit enabled ); // input: enable/disable
```

Note the following properties:

- `pipe_handle` - the handle identifying the specific pipe as derived from the unique path to the HDL endpoint of the pipe (see section 5.8.3).
- `enabled` - flag that indicates enable (1) or disable (0) this mode.
- The call returns the previous mode setting
- The pipe will remain in its current mode until any subsequent call to this function that changes the mode.
- By default, pipes are not in autoflush mode.
- If a call is made to `scemi_pipe_set_eom_auto_flush()` to enable autoflush mode when the pipe is not empty, the new setting will go into effect only on the next pipe operation and will not cause a flush of any existing elements in transit through the pipe. For example, if a pipe with a capacity of 10 contains 5 elements and a `scemi_pipe_set_eom_auto_flush()` call then enables autoflush mode, no flush is performed even if 1 or more of those 5 elements has `eom` set. However, if a call is subsequently made to send 1 more element with the `eom` bit set, all 6 elements are then flushed.
- The return value is the previous setting of `eom` autoflush mode (1 if enabled, 0 if not).

If autoflush mode is enabled and a call is made to one of the non-blocking pipe send functions (C-side `scemi_pipe_c_try_send()` or HDL-side `try_send()`) with the `eom` bit enabled, it will have the same effect on the internal state of the pipe as if the corresponding non-blocking flush function (C-side `scemi_pipe_c_try_flush()` or HDL-side `try_flush()` respectively), was called immediately after the send call.

#### 5.8.4.3.4 **Using flushing with data shaping**

When a flush (either implicit or explicit) occurs on a pipe used for data shaping, special considerations must be made if a producer endpoint of a pipe does data send operation with a smaller `num_elements` than that requested by the subsequent data receive operation at the consumer endpoint of that pipe. If the pipe is flushed on that send operation, in order to satisfy the flush the consumer will see a return of `num_elements_valid` that is smaller than its requested `num_elements`. This is because, in order to satisfy the producer's flush

condition, the consumer's blocking receive call must have satisfactorily returned from its read operation even if that read operation was asking for a larger number of elements than had been sent as of the time of the flush.

A similar issue applies when specifying a pre-mature `eom` as explained in section 4.8.8.1. Using the *nozzle* example from that section, if a consumer requests 100 elements, but the producer only sends 75 elements before flushing (either implicitly using `eom` or explicitly), the request to read 100 elements will return with a `num_elements_valid` of only 75 thus leaving the pipe empty as required by the flush and/or `eom`.

#### 5.8.4.4 Blocking pipes co-existence model

SCE-MI requires that implementer provided C-side pipes blocking interface shall not prevent user provided C-side pipes blocking interface from co-existing with the implementer C-side pipes non-blocking interface.

Note: SCE-MI C-side Pipes blocking semantics are intended to be implemented using a thread aware application to be determined by either the implementer or the end user. This implies that C-side Pipes blocking calls may be implemented in a tool using their threaded application of choice, and by an end user using their threaded application of choice. SCE-MI defines the interface and the semantics of SCE-MI C-side Transaction Pipes API: blocking, Thread-Aware interface in section 5.8.4.

SCE-MI requires that a tool implementing C-side Pipes blocking interface will allow end users implementing their C-side Pipes blocking interface to use their C-side Pipes blocking implementation together with the tool implementer C-side Pipes non-blocking interface.

Note: The above specification does not define which threaded applications implementers should use for implementing SCE-MI C-side Pipes blocking interface. This decision is left to the implementer. The above specification requires the implementer to allow end users to use the implementer provided Pipes C-side non-blocking interface for implementing their thread-aware blocking interface. The above specification also allows using both end-user SCE-MI C-side Pipes blocking interface and implementer C-side Pipes non-blocking interfaces together if end users choose to do so.

The mechanism by which implementers allows end users to choose between their own implementation of Pipes C-side blocking interface and implementer provided C-side Pipes blocking interface is left to the implementer.

### 5.8.5 Basic transaction pipes API: non-blocking, thread-neutral interface

Everything described so far has pertained to the blocking pipes. Additionally it is desirable to support a non-blocking pipes interface that can be used in *thread-neutral* implementations.

The non-blocking pipe interface calls have the following semantics.

- Thread-neutral - no thread-awareness required in the implementation
- Is sufficiently compatible with the Accellera Systems Initiative's SystemC-TLM interface model that it can be directly used to implement Accellera Systems Initiative's SystemC-TLM compliant interfaces
- Support user configuration and query of buffer depth
- Provide primitive non-blocking operations which can be used to build higher level interfaces that have blocking operations implemented in selected threading systems

#### 5.8.5.1 Pipe semantics

##### 5.8.5.1.1 Visibility modes

Transaction pipes support two modes of operations:

- deferred visibility
- immediate visibility

In *deferred visibility* mode, there is a defined lag between when elements are written to a pipe by the producer and when they are actually visible and available for consumption by the consumer. In this mode, while the producer has execution control, it may place one or more elements in the pipe via send operations, but the consumer cannot see any of the elements until it has been notified that the pipe is either filled or flushed. Conversely, once a pipe is filled or flushed, the producer cannot place any new elements in the pipe until it has been notified that all the previously added elements were consumed by the consumer via receive operations.

In *immediate visibility* mode, any elements written by the producer are immediately visible and are available for consumption whenever the consumer gains execution control even if notification has not occurred. In this

mode, while the producer has execution control, it may place one or more elements in the pipe via send operations. Even without the producer filling or flushing the pipe, the consumer can consume any of the elements in the pipe when it has execution control. Conversely, when execution control is switched from the consumer back to the producer, the producer may add new elements to the pipe even when previously added elements in the pipe have not been completely consumed by the consumer via receive operations.

To place a pipe in immediate visibility mode, the fourth `VISIBILITY_MODE` parameter of the pipe interface must be set to the value 1. To place a pipe in deferred visibility mode, the `VISIBILITY_MODE` parameter of the pipe interface must be set to the value 2. By default, this parameter is set to 0, denoting an illegal pipe interface with unspecified mode of operation.

#### 5.8.5.1.2 Notifications

As described in Section 5.8.2.1, the `scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback()` function is used to register user-defined notify callback functions for pipes. There are two types of programmable callback functions, a user defined "notify ok to send" function for an input pipe, and a user defined "notify ok to receive" function for an output pipe. The "notify operations" shown above correspond to calling these programmable functions from within the infrastructure to notify the application C-side that it has become *serviceable*. A producer becomes serviceable when it can place elements in the pipe via send operations; while a consumer becomes serviceable when it can consume elements from the pipe via receive operations.

For the deferred visibility mode, even if a consumer gains execution control, it will not have access to any elements in the pipe until it has been notified that the producer has filled or flushed the pipe. Similarly, even if a producer gains execution control, it will not have access to any empty space in the pipe until it has been notified that the consumer has emptied the pipe. Notification callback conditions must be met before exclusive access to pipe elements (or empty space) is allowed to switch between producer and consumer. For the immediate visibility mode, whenever a consumer gains execution control, it is always free to access any elements in the pipe and is not required to wait for notification. Similarly, whenever a producer gains execution control, it is always free to access any empty space in the pipe and is not required to wait for notification.

If any of the notify operations occur on the C-side of a pipe (i.e. notify of an input pipe's producer side or notify of an output pipe's consumer side), the registered notify callback functions of that pipe (if any) would be called immediately. In this case "immediately" means that the semantics of the notify callback has identical semantics to an HDL process calling an imported pure DPI function.

More specifically "immediately" means that the notify callback must occur at the same instant in simulation time as the non-blocking `try_send()` or `try_receive()` call that triggers it. However, there are two differing semantics governing when a pipe's notify callback is called depending on whether it is an *unlocked* pipe or a *clocked* pipe (see section 5.8.5.4.1 for a detailed description of the difference between a clocked pipe and an unlocked pipe).

- **For clocked pipes:** the term "immediately" above means that the notify callback on the C-side must be called within the same call chain as the HDL-side `try_send()`, `try_receive()` or `try_flush()` call that triggered it. The term *call chain*, in this case, has the same meaning as the call chain of an import DPI call - rooted on HDL SystemVerilog code and spanning into C-code. It is possible that the notify callback on the C-side may itself update the pipe using a non-blocking pipe call in response to the notify. However, the HDL-side `try_send()`, `try_receive()` or `try_flush()` call will not see the updated state before it returns. This insures that the *number of elements sent* returned by the `try_send()` call is consistent with the number that would have been indicated with `can_send()`, and that the *number of elements received* returned by the `try_receive()` call is consistent with the number that would have been indicated with `can_receive()`. This also maintains consistency with the semantics of the state diagram in figure Figure 5.11 of section 5.8.5.4.1.
- **For unlocked pipes:** the term "immediately" above means that the notify callback on the C-side *is not* called within the same call chain as the HDL-side `try_send()`, `try_receive()` or `try_flush()` call that triggered it. Rather it is called from a separate process triggered from a local SystemVerilog event in the HDL-side pipe interface implementation. And this local event

itself is triggered just prior to the return the `try_send()`, `try_receive()`, or `try_flush()` call.

#### 5.8.5.1.3 General concepts and semantic definitions for pipes

- **Buffer Capacity (BUFFER\_MAX\_ELEMENTS):** Buffer capacity is defined as the maximum number of elements that can exist in the buffer before a blocking send will block or a non-blocking send will fail. Buffer capacity is the same as the static `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` parameter defined in the SystemVerilog pipe interface definition. The default value of `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` is implementation defined but can be overridden by the user. If specified it must be greater than `PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS` or an error will occur.
- **Notification Threshold:** The notification threshold defines the minimum number of elements that must be added to an empty pipe before a consumer is notified or removed from a full pipe before a producer is notified. The notification threshold can be specified via the static parameter, `NOTIFICATION_THRESHOLD`. It can be set to either 1 or `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS`. All other values will result in an error. The default notification threshold for a pipe is `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS`. When the notification threshold is set to `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS`, notifications due to send and receive operations that occur when the pipe becomes full or empty, i.e. after adding `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` elements to an empty pipe or removing `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` elements from a full pipe. When the notification threshold is set to 1, notifications due to send and receive operations occur immediately, i.e. after adding at least one element to an empty pipe or removing at least one element from a full pipe. Notifications due to flush operations are not affected by the notification threshold setting. The state diagram in the next section will describe the precise semantics of when notifications occur with respect to threshold settings.
- **Producer, consumer:** The state diagram shown in the next section is generalized to refer to the *producer side* and the *consumer side* without referring specifically to input pipes or output pipes. In this way, the same diagram can generically and symmetrically describe either pipe direction. This implies the following:
  - For an input pipe, the producer side is the C-side and the consumer side is the HDL-side
  - For an output pipe, the producer side is the HDL-side and the consumer side is the C-side
- **Serviceable:** A pipe endpoint becomes serviceable if the pipe enters a state where that endpoint can successfully move elements to or from the pipe. Of course, execution control must first be acquired before elements can be added by a producer or removed by a consumer from the pipe.

For a pipe in deferred visibility mode:

- The producer side is serviceable only for the states within the left bounded box in the state diagram:  
*Empty/Buffering, Empty/Pending Receive*
- The consumer side is serviceable only for the states within the right bounded box in the state diagram:  
*Full/Buffering, Full/Pending Send, Flush*

For a pipe in immediate visibility mode:

- The producer side is serviceable whenever there is room to add at least one more element to the pipe, except when the pipe is in the *Flush* state.
  - The consumer side is serviceable whenever there is at least one element in the pipe. The pipe can be in any state in the state diagram.
- **Input actions / output consequences:** Each pipe transition is caused by an input action and may involve an output consequence.

Here are the possible input actions:

- `prod.try_send()` [adds] – producer adds one or more elements to the pipe but does not fill it.
- `prod.try_send()` [fills] – producer adds elements and fills the pipe but does not fail.
- `prod.try_send()` [fails] – producer attempts to add more elements than can be placed in the pipe (i.e. exceeds buffer capacity) and thus fills the pipe before the request can be satisfied.
- `prod.try_flush()` – producer attempts to flush the pipe.
- `cons.try_receive()` [removes] – consumer removes one or more elements from the pipe but does not empty it.
- `cons.try_receive()` [empties] – consumer removes elements and empties the pipe but does not fail.
- `cons.try_receive()` [fails] – consumer attempts to remove more elements than can be provided by the pipe and thus empties the pipe before the request can be satisfied.

The only possible output consequences of a pipe state transition are notify operations which can only occur in the specific pipe transitions that go from one side being notified to the other side being notified (i.e. transitions crossing the bounded box boundaries in the state diagrams):

- `/notify prod` – the consumer side notifies the producer side.
- `/notify cons` – the producer side notifies the consumer side.

In the state diagram, an additional modifier indicates how an input action's behavior depends on the notification threshold. If a send operation is performed, the number of elements that *will be* in the pipe *after* the send operation is compared to the threshold. If a receive operation is performed, the number of empty element space that *will be* in the pipe *after* the receive operation is compared to the threshold.

A '>=' modifier denotes the state transition that will occur if the indicated action occurs when the number of elements or empty space in the pipe after a send or receive operation is greater than or equal to the notification threshold.

A '<' modifier denotes the state transition that will occur if the indicated action occurs when the number of elements or empty space in the pipe after a send or receive operation is less than the notification threshold.

For the `prod.try_send()` [adds] action described above, an annotation with a threshold modifier has the following modified meanings:

- `prod.try_send()` [adds>=] – producer adds one or more elements to the pipe but does not fill it, *and the number of elements that will be in the pipe after the send operation is greater than or equal to the threshold.*
- `prod.try_send()` [adds<] – producer adds one or more elements to the pipe but does not fill it, *and the number of elements that will be in the pipe after the send operation is less than the threshold.*

For the `cons.try_receive()` [remove] action described above, an annotation with a threshold modifier has the following modified meanings:

- `cons.try_receive()` [removes>=] – consumer removes one or more elements from the pipe but does not empty it, *and the number of empty space that will be in the pipe after the receive operation is greater than or equal to the threshold.*
- `cons.try_receive()` [removes<] – consumer removes one or more elements from the pipe but does not empty it, *and the number of empty space that will be in the pipe after the receive operation is less than the threshold.*

If a pipe transition is annotated with a mode of operation, such as immediate visibility mode or deferred visibility mode, that transition applies only for that specified mode. If an action is shown on a transition with no threshold modifier, that transition applies regardless of the notification threshold setting.

Note: Notifications to the C-side will result in callback functions being called only when a non-NULL callback function pointer is currently registered.

- **Blocking vs. non-blocking operations:** All pipe operations in the state diagram are shown in terms of non-blocking operations. However, semantics of blocking operations can be inferred from this since it is possible to describe blocking operations in terms of non-blocking operations. For example, the same condition that causes a non-blocking operation to fail will cause a blocking operation to block. A blocking operation can be thought of as a loop of a non-blocking operation and a wait on an implied event until the condition for unblocking is satisfied. Update of the event is implied to occur on the notify operation. Examples of C-side reference implementations of blocking operations built from non-blocking API calls are shown in section 5.8.5.3.
- **Push/pull operation:** This is used to describe behavior of a pipe when a producer is trying to *push* data through a pipe or a consumer is trying to *pull* data through a pipe. Push/pull operation has slightly different behaviors depending on the current number of elements in a pipe compared to its notification threshold setting.

If a producer send operation is successful and it fills the pipe (i.e. the action of `prod.try_send() [fills]`), this will not trigger a notify to the consumer side unless there is a pending receive in effect (i.e. the pipe is in the *empty/pending receive* state). In this case the pending receive is attempting to "pull" data from the pipe and therefore wants to be notified as soon as the pipe becomes full.

Similarly, if a consumer receive operation is successful and it empties the pipe (i.e. the action of `cons.try_receive() [empties]`), this will not trigger a notify to the producer side unless there is a pending send in effect (i.e. the pipe is in the *full/pending send* state). In this case the pending send is attempting to "push" data to the pipe and therefore wants to be notified as soon as the pipe becomes empty.

Note the following additional property of push/pull operation:

For deferred mode only, if a pipe is in the *empty/buffering* state and the consumer requests data, this will cause a transition to the *empty/pending receive* state since the request fails and there is now a pending receive. This is true regardless of the number of elements that may have been added to the pipe up to this point while it was in the *empty/buffering* state.

However, there is a slight difference in operation between the following two scenarios while the pipe is in the *empty/buffering* state just prior to the point at which the consumer receive operation occurs:

1. Pipe is in the *empty/buffering* state and the pipe is not full
2. Pipe is in the *empty/buffering* state and the pipe is full

In scenario #1, the transition to the *empty/pending receive* state still occurs and, as shown in the diagram, no notification occurs. From this point if the producer then precisely fills the pipe (i.e. does not fail) a notification will occur to the consumer and the pipe will transition to the *full/buffering* state.

In scenario #2, the transition to the *empty/pending receive* state still occurs and, as shown in the diagram, no notification occurs. However in this case the notification will occur only when the producer does yet another send, causing a fail. In this case the pipe would transition to the *full/pending send* state.

So, as can be seen from above description, slightly different notification behavior will occur depending on which of the above two scenarios is in effect at the time the consumer makes its receive request.

Coherency of pipe states is expected to be maintained by the implementation identically on both sides of the pipe. That is, the producer side's view of the pipe state must be identical to the consumer side's view at all times. Notify operations only occur on transitions to different states and never to the same state. Therefore maintaining this coherency across the two sides is practical and efficient. It also guarantees minimal notifies across the C-side/HDL-side boundary and prevents an "oscillation" of repeated "try" operations such as a polling operation, causing excessive notifies across the link in cases where the pipe remains in the same state.

#### 5.8.5.1.4 Pipe states

Figure 5.11 below specifies the precise operation of a transaction pipe. The formal definitions of the states and the actions and consequences associated with the state transactions are described in the text that follows.

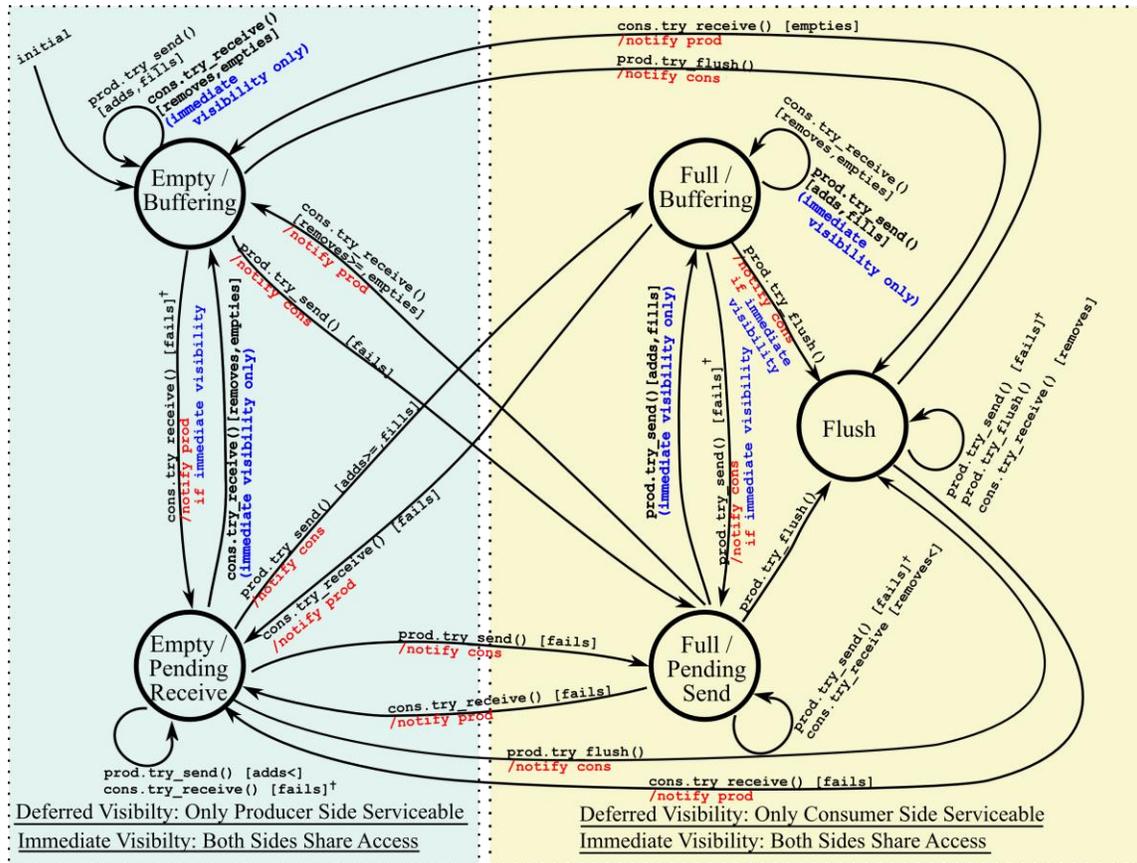


Figure 5.11 Pipe State Diagram

† Note: In this diagram, states from which input actions occur with [fails]† notations indicate that special semantics need to be considered depending on whether the pipe is in deferred visibility mode or immediate visibility mode.

- For deferred visibility mode, from these states, only a [fails]† is possible for the indicated action type. If prod.try\_send() operation is attempted from the flush state, full/buffering state or full/pending send state, [adds] or [fills] actions are not applicable (they will always fail). Similarly, if cons.try\_receive() operation is attempted from the empty/pending and empty/pending receive state, [removes] or [empties] actions are not applicable.
- For immediate visibility mode, if prod.try\_send() operation is attempted from the flush state, [adds] or [fills] actions are not applicable (they will always fail). However, from the empty/buffering state and empty/pending receive state, [removes] and [empties] actions are possible if the pipe is not empty. Similarly from the full/buffering state and full/pending send state, [adds] and [fills] actions are possible if the pipe is not full.

The following are descriptions of the pipe states:

- **Empty/Buffering state:**

A pipe in deferred visibility mode transitions to the *empty/buffering state* from the *full/pending send state* or the *flush state* when a consumer receive operation empties the pipe. The pipe remains in this state as long as the producer is able to successfully send its requested number of elements. Even when `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` elements are added, the elements are still not visible to the consumer, thus the pipe remains “empty” from the consumer's point of view. Only when a failed operation occurs will there be a change of pipe state. A failed receive operation causes the pipe to transition to the *empty/pending receive state*. A failed send operation causes the pipe to transition to the *full/pending send state* where only the consumer is serviceable.

A pipe in immediate visibility mode can transition to the *empty/buffering state* from three different pipe states. From the *flush state*, the transition occurs when a consumer receive operation empties the pipe. From the *full/pending send state*, the transition occurs when the consumer empties the pipe or removes enough elements to meet the notification threshold. From the *empty/pending receive state*, the transition occurs when there is no longer a pending receive, that is, when a consumer receive operation is successful in removing its requested number of elements from the pipe. Identical to deferred visibility mode, the pipe remains in this state as long as the producer is able to successfully send its requested number of elements. Once elements are added to the pipe by the producer, the consumer also becomes serviceable in this “buffering” state and can remove the added elements at any time.

- **Full/Buffering state:**

A pipe in deferred visibility mode transitions to the *full/buffering state* from the *empty/pending receive state* when a producer send operation fills the pipe. The pipe remains in this state as long as the consumer is able to successfully receive its requested number of elements. Even when all the elements are removed, the empty pipe is still not visible to the producer, thus the pipe remains “full” from the producer’s point of view. Only when a failed operation occurs will there be a change of pipe state. A failed send operation causes the pipe to transition to the *full/pending send state*. A failed receive operation causes the pipe to transition to the *empty/pending receive state* where only the producer is serviceable.

A pipe in immediate visibility mode transitions to the *full/buffering state* from the *empty/pending receive state* when the producer fills the pipe or adds enough elements to meet the notification threshold. In addition, it also transitions to the *full/buffering state* from the *full/pending send state* when there is no longer a pending send. That is, when a producer send operation is successful in adding its requested number of elements to the pipe. Identical to deferred visibility mode, the pipe remains in this state as long as the consumer is able to successfully receive its requested number of elements. Once elements are removed from the pipe by the consumer, the producer also becomes serviceable in this “buffering” state and can add new elements to the empty space of the pipe at any time.

- **Empty/Pending receive state:**

A pipe transitions to the *empty/pending receive state* when a consumer receive operation fails. This occurs when the consumer attempts to receive more elements than what is available in the pipe, thus causing the pipe to become empty before satisfying the receive request. The pipe remains in this state as long as the producer is able to successfully send its requested number of elements without filling the pipe or meeting the notification threshold. Unlike the *empty/buffering state*, in this “pending” state, it does not require a failed operation for a change of pipe state. Just filling the pipe or meeting the notification threshold is enough. This constitutes a *pull operation* where the consumer tries to “pull” data from the pipe and wants to be notified when the pipe becomes full or meets the notification threshold (see push/pull description above).

- **Full/Pending send state:**

A pipe transitions to the *full/pending send state* when a producer send operation fails, unless the pipe is in the *flush state*. This occurs when the producer attempts to send more elements than the available empty space in the pipe, thus causing the pipe to become full before satisfying the send

request. The pipe remains in this state as long as the consumer is able to successfully receive its requested number of elements without emptying the pipe or meeting the notification threshold. Unlike the *full/buffering state*, in this “pending” state, it does not require a failed operation for a change of pipe state. Just emptying the pipe or meeting the notification threshold is enough. This constitutes a *push operation* where the producer tries to “push” data through the pipe and wants to be notified when the pipe becomes empty or meets the notification threshold (see push/pull description above).

- **Flush state:**

A pipe transitions to the *flush state* when a producer flush operation is called on a non-empty pipe. The pipe remains in this state until all elements are removed by the consumer.

### 5.8.5.2 General application use models for pipes

Threshold and visibility settings can be combined to configure 3 useful transaction pipe models:

- **NOTIFICATION\_THRESHOLD=BUFFER\_MAX\_ELEMENTS, VISIBILITY\_MODE=2** (deferred visibility): This is a pipe configuration where notify callbacks occur only when a pipe is empty, full or flushed, and producer and consumer would alternately granted exclusive access to the pipe via notification. This is useful for implementing pipelined or streaming semantics similar to how Unix named pipes or file streams work. Data written by the producer is not visible to the consumer until it is pushed through by becoming full or flushed. Transaction pipes that are configured with this setting shall be referred to as deferred pipes.
- **NOTIFICATION\_THRESHOLD=BUFFER\_MAX\_ELEMENTS, VISIBILITY\_MODE=1** (immediate visibility): This is a pipe configuration where notify callbacks occur only when a pipe is empty, full or flushed while allowing shared access to the pipe for the consumer and producer. This provides applications the flexibility to overlap send and receive operations while limiting notification frequency for performance. Transaction pipes that are configured with this setting shall be referred to as immediate pipes.
- **NOTIFICATION\_THRESHOLD=1, VISIBILITY\_MODE=1** (immediate visibility): This is a pipe configuration where notify callbacks occur when a pipe is empty, full or flushed as well as when elements are added to an empty pipe or removed from a full pipe. This is useful for implementing fifo semantics similar to how `tlm_fifo`'s work in the Accellera Systems Initiative's TLM standard. Data written by the producer is immediately visible to the consumer and any consumer doing a blocking get will be immediately notified. Transaction pipes that are configured with this setting shall be referred to as fifos.

No other combinations of `NOTIFICATION_THRESHOLD` and `VISIBILITY_MODE` are defined and will result in an error.

#### 5.8.5.2.1 Deferred pipe semantics

The following paragraph explains how the pipe can be configured for use model #1 above (deferred pipe semantics). These semantics are in effect when a pipe has been configured for deferred visibility (`VISIBILITY_MODE = 2`). In this visibility mode, the threshold setting is automatically set to `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` regardless of the user-specified parameter value.

For deferred pipe semantics only one side of the pipe can be serviceable at one time. The goal of deferred pipe semantics is to defer notification and visibility (or data transfer) as long as possible to promote buffered data aggregation and streaming.

Initially the pipe is in an *Empty/Buffering* state. This means that from the point of view of the consumer, the pipe is empty. From the point of view of the producer, the pipe is also empty after initialization but it is serviceable in the sense that at any time it is free to start at adding elements.

Consider two possible scenarios starting from the initial *Empty/Buffering* state:

1. The producer takes the first action of adding elements to the pipe.
2. The consumer takes the first action of attempting to remove elements from the pipe.

In scenario #1, as long as the producer continues to add elements up to and including the point of filling the pipe, the pipe remains in the *Empty/Buffering* state. This is because from the consumer's point of view the pipe is still empty since it has not been notified otherwise – that is, its notification is *deferred*. Once the pipe is filled, if the producer attempts to send another element to the pipe, this attempt will fail since the pipe is full.

At this point a notification is finally sent to the consumer and the pipe enters the *Full/Pending* send state since it assumes that the producer now has a pending send that it wishes to make. At this point, the pipe is only serviceable by the consumer and not the producer.

As long as consumer continues to successfully remove elements without emptying the pipe, the pipe remains in the *Full/Pending Send* state. If, on a last successful receive operation, the pipe is finally emptied, a notification is immediately sent to the producer since it had been in a pending send and wishes to be notified as soon as the pipe is emptied. At this point the pipe returns to the *Empty/Buffering* state and is serviceable only by the producer.

In scenario #2 above, when the pipe is initially in the *Empty/Buffering* state, suppose the consumer takes the first action of attempting to remove an element from the pipe. But this attempt will fail since the pipe is empty. However because the attempt was made, the pipe assumes that a pending receive is in effect by the consumer and so the pipe enters the *Empty/Pending Receive* state.

As long as the producer continues to successfully add elements without filling the pipe, the pipe remains in the *Empty/Pending Receive* state. This is because from the consumer's point of view the pipe is still empty since it has not been notified otherwise – that is, again, its notification is *deferred*. If, on a last successful send operation the pipe is finally filled, a notification is immediately sent to the consumer side since it had a pending receive in effect and wishes to be notified as soon as the pipe is filled. At this point the pipe enters the *Full/Buffering* state and is serviceable only by the consumer.

The difference between the *Full/Buffering* state and the *Full/Pending Send* state is that in the *Full/Buffering* state, when the pipe first becomes empty, this still *does not* trigger a notification to the producer, since the pipe assumes that because there is no pending send the producer is not *pushing* data to the pipe (see *push/pull operation* described above) and therefore it does not wish to be notified right away when the pipe becomes empty. Whereas in the *Full/Pending Send* state the producer is indeed *pushing* data to the pipe and wishes to be notified right way when the pipe becomes empty, so when the pipe first becomes empty, this *does* trigger a notification to the producer.

Conversely difference between the *Empty/Buffering* state and the *Empty/Pending Send* state is that in the *Empty/Buffering* state, when the pipe first becomes full, this still *does not* trigger a notification to the consumer, since the pipe assumes that because there is no pending receive the consumer is not *pulling* data from the pipe (see *push/pull operation* described above) and therefore it does not wish to be notified right away when the pipe becomes full. Whereas in the *Empty/Pending Receive* state the consumer is indeed *pulling* data from the pipe and wishes to be notified right way when the pipe becomes full, so when the pipe first becomes full, this *does* trigger a notification to the consumer.

Given the above definitions, and the state diagram in Figure 5.11, here is a list of conditions that cause pipes with *deferred pipe semantics* to become serviceable:

- The consumer side of a pipe will become serviceable under the following conditions (corresponding to yellow box states in Figure 5.11)
  - if a producer-side blocking send operation is blocked or a non-blocking send operation failed to add all requested elements because the pipe became full (i.e. a `prod.try_send()` [fails] action), or
  - if the pipe is in an empty/pending receive state and a producer-side blocking or non-blocking send operation successfully adds enough elements to fill the pipe (i.e. a `prod.try_send()` [fills] action), or
  - if pipe goes into flush state because of a flush call from the producer-side.
- The producer side of a pipe will become serviceable under the following conditions (corresponding to blue box states in Figure 5.11):

- if a consumer-side blocking receive operation was blocked or a non-blocking receive operation failed to remove all requested elements because the pipe became empty (i.e. a `cons.try_receive()` [fails] action), or
- if the pipe is in a flush state and a consumer-side blocking or non-blocking receive operation successfully empties it, or
- if the pipe is in a full/pending send state and a consumer-side blocking or non-blocking receive operation successfully consumes all `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` elements (i.e. a `cons.try_receive()` [empties] action).

#### 5.8.5.2.2 Immediate pipe semantics

An immediate pipe, designated as use model #2 above, is a transaction pipe with immediate visibility and default pipe notifications (empty, full, or flushed). This pipe configuration provides applications the flexibility to overlap send and receive operations while limiting the number or frequency of notifications for performance.

In this pipe model, there is a single shared view of the pipe for both the producer and the consumer. The producer can send elements to the pipe as long as it is not full. When the pipe becomes full while the producer is still attempting to send more data, the producer is no longer serviceable. The producer will become serviceable again when elements are removed from the pipe by the consumer. When the producer fails to send, the producer application can choose to block waiting for (1) pipe notification, or (2) events such as time events, DPI events, and host-emulator synchronization events. A failed blocking `send` operation would always be blocked waiting for the pipe (empty) notification. For a failed non-blocking `try_send`, the producer application chooses the means of waiting. It can be the same pipe notification for minimal notification overhead, or it can leverage other events to implement finer flow control of the data between producer and consumer to meet its specific needs without incurring performance overheads from frequent notifications.

Similarly, the consumer can receive elements from the pipe as long as it is not empty. When the pipe becomes empty while the consumer is still attempting to receive more data, the consumer is no longer serviceable. The consumer will become serviceable again when elements are added to the pipe by the producer. When the consumer fails to receive, the consumer application can also choose to block waiting for (1) pipe notification, or (2) events such as time events, DPI events, and host-emulator synchronization events. A failed blocking `receive` operation would always be blocked waiting for the pipe (full or flushed) notification. For a failed non-blocking `try_receive`, the consumer application chooses the means of waiting. It can be the same pipe notification for minimal notification overhead, or it can leverage other events to implement finer flow control of the data between producer and consumer to meet its specific needs without incurring performance overheads from frequent notifications.

Let's take a brief look at the specific states and transitions for an immediate pipe:

- Empty/Buffering and Full/Buffering: Consider a newly created immediate pipe. Initially, the pipe is empty and is placed in the Empty/Buffering state. The pipe would remain in this state as long as there is no failed send or receive operation. That is, as long as (1) the producer does not try to send more elements than the pipe can hold and (2) the consumer does not try to receive more elements than the producer has already placed in the pipe, data can continue to be transferred smoothly from producer to consumer without requiring any pipe notifications. Likewise, a pipe that has been transitioned to the Full/Buffering state would remain in that state as long as there is no failed send or receive operation, allowing efficient data transfer without notification.
- Full/Pending Send: Consider the scenario when the pipe becomes full while the producer is still trying to send more data. This failed send operation causes the pipe to transition to the Full/Pending Send state. At this point, the producer is no longer serviceable and is typically suspended waiting for some trigger events. If the producer is waiting for pipe notification, then it will not wake up until the pipe is completely emptied by the consumer. A pipe that is emptied transitions to the Empty/Pending Receive state if the consumer is still trying to receive more data; otherwise, it transitions to the Empty/Buffering state. On the other hand, if the producer is waiting for a trigger event other than the pipe notification, it can wake up prior to the pipe becoming empty. If the producer is successful in sending the pending number of elements to the pipe, the pipe transitions to the Full/Buffering state, reflecting that there is no longer any pending send.

- **Empty/Pending Receive:** Consider the scenario when the pipe becomes empty while the consumer is still trying to receive more data. This failed receive operation causes the pipe to transition to the Empty/Pending Receive state. At this point, the consumer is no longer serviceable and is typically suspended waiting for some trigger events. If the consumer is waiting for pipe notification, then it will not wake up until the pipe is completely filled by the producer. A pipe that is filled transitions to the Full/Pending Send state if the producer is still trying to send more data; otherwise, it transitions to the Full/Buffering state. On the other hand, if the consumer is waiting for a trigger event other than the pipe notification, it can wake up prior to the pipe becoming full. If the consumer is successful in receiving the pending number of elements from the pipe, the pipe transitions to the Empty/Buffering state, reflecting that there is no longer any pending receive.

When using blocking pipe interface, both immediate pipes and deferred pipes (use model #1) behave the same way as to when an operation is unblocked. The difference lies in as to when an operation is blocked. For the deferred pipe, blocking occurs when the pipe is perceived to be full or empty. For the immediate pipe, blocking only occurs when the pipe is actually full when sending and empty when receiving.

When using non-blocking interface, an immediate pipe behaves similarly to a FIFO (use model #3) as both pipe transaction models are configured for immediate visibility, allowing overlapping send and receive operations. The difference lies in as to when notification occurs when there is a pending receive or pending send. For the FIFO, notification occurs as soon as an element is added to an empty pipe or an element is removed from a full pipe. For the immediate pipe, notification only occurs when the pipe is filled before the pending receive is satisfied or when the pipe is emptied before the pending send is satisfied.

#### 5.8.5.2.3 **FIFO semantics**

The following paragraph explains how the pipe can be configured for use model #3 above (FIFO semantics). These semantics are in effect when the threshold setting is 1 and the pipe has been configured for immediate visibility (`VISIBILITY_MODE = 1`).

The easiest way to describe FIFO semantics to start with the assumption that there is some non-zero number of elements in the pipe and it is in one of the two *buffering* states.

At this point both the producer and consumer are serviceable meaning that elements can be both added and removed.

If the producer continues to add elements until the pipe fills, the next time it attempts to add an element, it will fail and the pipe will transition to the *Full/Pending Send* state meaning that a send was attempted, failed, and the producer is now assumed to have a pending send in effect. At this point, only the consumer is serviceable since elements can only be removed, not added. Once the consumer has removed at least one element, a notification is sent to the producer that indicates it can start adding elements again, and the pipe goes back to one of the two *buffering* states (specifically in this case, to state *empty/buffering*).

So now the pipe is back in the *empty/buffering* state.

At this point if the consumer continues to remove elements until the pipe is empty, the next time it attempts to remove an element, it will fail and the pipe will transition to the *Empty/Pending Receive* state meaning that a receive was attempted, failed, and the consumer is now assumed to have a pending receive in effect. At this point, only the producer is serviceable since elements can only be added, not removed. Once the producer has added at least one element, a notification is sent to the consumer that indicates it can start removing elements again, and the pipe goes back to one of the two *buffering* states (specifically in this case, to state *full/buffering*).

Given the above definitions, and the state diagram in Figure 5.11, here is a list of conditions that cause pipes that have *fifo semantics* to become serviceable:

- Both the consumer side and the producer side of a pipe will become serviceable after any operation that causes the pipe to go into one of the two *buffering* states,
- In addition to above, the consumer side is serviceable after any operation that causes the pipe to go into the *full/pending send* or *flush* state,
- In addition to the above, the producer side becomes serviceable after any operation that causes the pipe to go into the *empty/pending send* state.

#### 5.8.5.2.4 Visibility modes

The two different visibility modes of pipe operation described above together cover a wide range of use models for co-emulation needs, offering interoperability without (1) sacrificing ease-of-use and performance and (2) robbing application the flexibility to leverage other synchronization events, such as time events and DPI events, to more effectively control data flow between producer and consumer. Table 5.2 gives a simple at-a-glance comparison between the two modes.

	Deferred Visibility Mode	Immediate Visibility Mode
Pipe view and visibility	Split views between producer and consumer. Producer's perspective and consumer's perspective are synchronized only at discrete notification point (empty, full, flush).	A single shared pipe: Pipe view is the same between producer and consumer, allowing access to pipe elements at any time.
Sample use models	Well defined "non-overlapped" or discrete data movements between producer and consumer: when notified pipe empty, full, or flushed.	Non-blocking pipe interface allows "overlapping" or continuous data movements between producer and consumer: when execution control is acquired.  Synchronization events other than pipe notifications such as DPI events can be leveraged to synchronize producer and consumer to meet application-specific needs (programmable granularity of synchronization for performance).

**Table 5.2: Comparison of deferred and immediate visibility modes**

*Given the above definitions, the number of notify callbacks is minimal and optimizes the performance by allowing the HDL side to run as long as possible.*

*The above semantics can be implemented using standard DPI calls.*

*The semantics do not depend on any infrastructure level capabilities outside a SCE-MI 2 Pipes compliant implementation.*

*The semantics of notify for a given pipe is only dependent on the state of the pipe that notify corresponds to.*

*The above semantics do not depend on whether a threaded application (such as SystemC) is used or not used on the C-side and whether the threaded application is linked or not with the HDL side simulation kernel. The semantics do not depend on whether the C side uses only non-blocking calls or if the C-side Pipes implemented blocking calls by using Pipes C-side non blocking calls in conjunction with the notify callback calls.*

*An attempt to send the message from the C-side on an input pipe where the specified number of elements was not entirely consumed by the pipe leaves a partial message on the C side. This message is recognized as "pending message" and the input pipe is set to a "pending message state". When the input pipe becomes empty, the notify callback (for the input pipe) will be called. This allows the C side to send the rest of the pending message or additional elements from the pending message into the pipe.*

*The C-side OK to send notify() callback will not be called when an input pipe becomes empty unless it is in a pending message, in a flush state or if the pipe is empty at simulation start.. This allows the HDL side to request a new message by using a blocking or non-blocking HDL side receive call or an empty pipe causing OK to send notify() callback to be called. These semantics also avoids sending any excessive notifications when the transactor consumed the pervious message and wishes to stay in idle state or when it knows that the test has ended.*

*The notify callback functions typically get registered at initialization time although they can be registered at any time. Additionally, previously registered notify function pointer can, at any time, be replaced with another.*

*The notify\_ok\_to\_send() and notify\_ok\_to\_receive() functions are callbacks that can be called directly or indirectly from within the thread-neutral implementation code to notify thread-aware application code on the C side when it is OK to send or receive. By implementing the bodies of these functions a user can put in thread specific code that takes some action such as posting to a SystemC sc\_event.*

*So the key here is that the data transfer and query functions have thread-neutral implementation. And the notify functions are callbacks called from within thread-neutral code that can be filled in by some application wishing to create a thread-aware adapter that implements blocking send() and receive() functions.*

### 5.8.5.3 Transaction pipes - non-blocking operations

On the C side, the non-blocking pipe access interface consists of *calling* functions and *callback* functions classified as *data transfer* operations, *query* operations, and *notify* operations for each pipe direction,

- Data transfer operations:

```
scemi_pipe_c_try_send()  
scemi_pipe_c_try_receive()  
scemi_pipe_c_try_flush()
```

- Query operations:

```
scemi_pipe_c_can_send()  
scemi_pipe_c_can_receive()  
scemi_pipe_c_in_flush_state()
```

- Notify operations:

```
(*scemi_pipe_c_notify_ok_to_send)()  
(*scemi_pipe_c_notify_ok_to_receive)()
```

- User data storage and retrieval:

```
scemi_pipe_put_user_data()  
scemi_pipe_get_user_data()
```

#### 5.8.5.3.1 Non-blocking data transfer operations

These are the basic non-blocking send/receive functions to access a transaction pipe from the C side. The send/receive functions are provided in pairs that differ only in the type of the data argument. The *send* functions are called to attempt to send transactions to an input pipe. The *receive* functions are called to attempt to receive transactions from an output pipe. The *flush* function is called to attempt to flush an input pipe.

```

int scemi_pipe_c_try_send( // return: #requested elements
                          //          that are actually sent
    void *pipe_handle,    // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,     // input: byte offset into data, below
    int num_elements,    // input: #elements to be sent
    const svBitVecVal *data, // input: data
    svBit eom );        // input: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_send_bytes( // return: #requested elements
                                 //          that are actually sent
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,           // input: byte offset into data, below
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be sent
    const char *data,          // input: data
    svBit eom );              // input: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_receive( // return: #requested elements
                              //          that are actually received
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,          // input: byte offset into data, below
    int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be read
    svBitVecVal *data,       // output: data
    svBit *eom );           // output: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_receive_bytes( // return: #requested elements
                                     //          that are actually received
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,           // input: byte offset into data, below
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be read
    char *data,                // output: data
    svBit *eom );             // output: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_flush( // indication of whether flush was successful
    void *pipe_handle );    // input: pipe handle

```

Note: Take into account the following properties:

- The arguments, `pipe_handle`, `num_elements`, `data`, and `eom` are identical to those described for the blocking function, `scemi_pipe_c_send()`, `scemi_pipe_c_send_bytes()`, `scemi_pipe_c_receive()`, and `scemi_pipe_c_receive_bytes()`, respectively described in section 5.8.4.1.1.
- The `byte_offset` argument is the byte offset within the data buffer designated by `data`.
- The `scemi_pipe_c_try_send()`, `scemi_pipe_c_try_send_bytes()`, `scemi_pipe_c_try_receive()`, and `scemi_pipe_c_try_receive_bytes()` functions return the number of elements actually transferred.
- The `scemi_pipe_c_try_flush` function returns 1 if flush successful, 0 if not

By using the `byte_offset` argument, it is possible to create blocking functions that operate on unlimited data buffers on the C side. Despite the fact that pipe buffers are statically sized on the HDL-side with the `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` parameter and HDL-side `send()/try_send()` and `receive()/try_receive()` calls are limited to `PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS` elements per call (see section 5.8.5.1.3), on the C-side neither limitation exists and calls to blocking/non-blocking send or receive can be made with buffers of any size. Even if buffers in the internal implementation are of limited size, multiple calls to the non-blocking send/receive functions can be made until all the data is transferred. This makes it easy to build blocking data transfer functions that handle buffers of unlimited size on top of the non-blocking data transfer functions. Each call to the non-blocking function is made with the same base data buffer pointer but an increasing byte offset. Each call returns the actual number of elements transferred. This number can be translated to an increment amount

for the byte offset to be passed to the next call in the loop - without changing the base `svBitVecVal *data` or `char *data` pointer.

#### 5.8.5.3.2 Non-blocking query operations

These are the status query functions for transaction pipes. They can be called by an application from the C side to see if a send or receive operation can be performed on a pipe.

```
int scemi_pipe_c_can_send( // return: #elements that can be sent
    void *pipe_handle ); // input: pipe handle

int scemi_pipe_c_can_receive( // return: #elements that can be received
    void *pipe_handle ); // input: pipe handle

svBit scemi_pipe_c_in_flush_state( // return: whether pipe is in Flush state
    void *pipe_handle ); // input: pipe handle
```

Note the following properties:

- The arguments, `pipe_handle`, and `num_elements` are identical to those described for the blocking function, `scemi_pipe_c_send()` described in section 5.8.4.1.1.
- The functions return the number of elements that currently could be transferred in the pipe, i.e. the amount of room in an input pipe or number of elements available in an output pipe.
- The `scemi_pipe_c_in_flush_state()` function returns 1 if the pipe is in the Flush state as described in section 5.8.4.3. Note that this information is needed for determining the exit condition of a blocking receive request.

#### 5.8.5.3.3 Non-blocking notify operations

The following is a function declaration for notification callback functions that are used to notify the C side that an operation is possible on an input or output transaction pipe.

```
typedef void (*scemi_pipe_notify_callback)(
    void *context ); // input: C model context
```

The following is a type declaration of the notify callback handles.

```
typedef void * scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle;
```

The notify callback handle type is opaque and the underlying type is implementation defined.

All notification callbacks must be registered using the following call:

```
scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback(
    void *pipe_handle, // input: pipe handle
    scemi_pipe_notify_callback notify_callback,
    // input: notify callback function
    void *notify_context, // input: notify context
    int callback_threshold );
    // input: threshold for invoking notify callback function
```

Note the following properties:

- `pipe_handle` - the handle identifying the specific pipe as derived from the unique combination of the HDL scope and the pipe ID (see section 5.8.3)
- `notify_callback` - the name of the user callback function being registered.
- `notify_context` - the user-defined context object to be passed to the function whenever it is called.
- `callback_threshold` - the user-defined callback threshold that must be met whenever the function is called.
- `callback_threshold = 0`: When a callback function is registered with `callback_threshold = 0`, it corresponds to a persistent static callback.

- Persistent: The callback function remains valid until it is explicitly de-registered by calling `scemi_pipe_clear_notify_callback` as described below.
- Static Condition: The callback function is invoked called by the infrastructure only when pipe notification occurs as dictated by the pipe state diagram in Section 5.8.5.1.4
- `callback_threshold > 0`: When a callback function is registered with `callback_threshold > 0`, it corresponds to a one-time dynamic callback.
  - One-time: The callback function remains valid only until it is invoked or it is explicitly de-registered by calling `scemi_pipe_clear_notify_callback`. Once invoked, the callback function is implicitly de-registered.
  - Dynamic Condition: The callback function is invoked by the infrastructure only when the `callback_threshold` condition is met or when an output pipe is flushed. This allows an application to dynamically specify the minimal or ideal condition when the callback should be invoked. The infrastructure is not required to invoke the callback function immediately upon meeting the threshold condition and is allowed to delay the callback until the next pipe notification. For an input pipe, dynamic callback can occur whenever `scemi_pipe_c_can_send() >= callback_threshold`. For an output pipe, dynamic callback can occur whenever `scemi_pipe_c_can_receive() >= callback_threshold` or when the pipe is flushed. For example, if an application wants to receive 10 elements from an immediate output pipe with buffer size = 50, it can simply register a dynamic callback function with `callback_threshold = 10`. This gives the infrastructure freedom to invoke the callback once the pipe contains 10 elements, which can occur before pipe notification of a filled or flushed pipe. When the callback threshold is met prior to pipe notification threshold, there is a range of time when the callback can be invoked. The exact time of callback can vary from implementation to implementation, but must be repeatable. To ensure identical implementation-independent callback timing, `callback_threshold` should be set to the `notification_threshold` of the pipe.

The return value of `scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback` is a notify callback handle that uniquely identifies the callback. Any number of callbacks can be registered for each pipe. On notify events, if more than one callback is eligible to be called (as determined by the `callback_threshold` argument), the eligible callbacks will be called in the order of registration.

If a callback modifies the pipe state in any way, e.g., by removing elements from the pipe, any downstream callbacks will see the effect of this operation.

This handle can be used to remove a callback at any time using the following function:

```
void scemi_pipe_clear_notify_callback(
    scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle notify_callback_handle );
    // input: notify callback handle
```

The `scemi_pipe_clear_notify_callback()` registers errors under the following conditions:

- The `notify_handle` value is not a value returned by a previous `scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback()` call.
- The callback was already removed by a prior call of `scemi_pipe_clear_notify_callback()`.
- The callback was registered with a `callback_threshold` value greater than 0 and the callback has expired and been removed by the infrastructure.

The following call can be used to retrieve a notify context object for a given pipe:

```
void *scemi_pipe_get_notify_context( // return: notify context object pointer
    scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle notify_callback_handle);
    // input: notify handle
```

This call is useful to determine whether or not a notify context object is being established for the first time. It is guaranteed that this call will return a NULL if a notify context has not yet been established. This is useful for performing first time initializations inside pipe operations rather than requiring initialization to be performed outside of them. See the example of the blocking send function implementation in section 5.8.4.1.1 for an

example of how this might be done.

Note the following properties:

- `pipe_handle` - the handle identifying the specific pipe as derived from the unique combination of the HDL scope and the pipe ID (see section 5.8.3)
- `notify_callback` - the name of the user callback function being registered.
- `notify_context` - the user defined context object to be passed to the function whenever it is called

Appendix A: shows how dynamic callbacks can be used to implement a user defined blocking send function on top of a non-blocking send function.

#### 5.8.5.3.4 Non-blocking user data storage and retrieval

These are the functions for storing and retrieving user data for transaction pipes. These *put* and *get* functions provide data storage on a per-pipe basis, controllable by a user-defined key. They can be called by an application from the C side.

```
void scemi_pipe_put_user_data(
    void *pipe_handle,      // input: pipe handle
    void *user_key,        // input: user key
    void *user_data);      // input: user data

void *scemi_pipe_get_user_data(
    void *pipe_handle,     // input: pipe handle
    void *user_key);      // input: user key
```

The `scemi_pipe_put_user_data` function is used to store a user data pointer for later retrieval by `scemi_pipe_get_user_data`. The `user_key` is a user-defined key generated by the application. It should be unique from all other user keys to guarantee unique data storage. It is recommended that the address of static functions or variables in the application's C code be used as the user key. It is important that general applications should refrain from using NULL value as the user key. The NULL value user key is reserved for use only by the infrastructure blocking API. It is an error to call `scemi_pipe_put_user_data` with an invalid `pipe_handle` or with a NULL `user_data`.

The `scemi_pipe_get_user_data` function is used to retrieve a user data pointer that was previously stored by a call to `scemi_pipe_put_user_data`. This function returns NULL when called with an invalid `pipe_handle` or in the event that a prior call to `scemi_pipe_put_user_data` was never made with the same `pipe_handle` and `user_key` arguments. Otherwise, the stored user data pointer is returned.

#### 5.8.5.3.5 Query Functions

The following query functions can be used in either the non-blocking or blocking pipes.

The following call can be used to retrieve the *bytes per element* for a given pipe:

```
int scemi_pipe_get_bytes_per_element( // return: bytes per element
    void *pipe_handle );              // input: pipe handle
```

The following call can be used to retrieve *direction* of a given pipe:

```
svBit scemi_pipe_get_direction( // return: 1 for input pipe, 0 for output pipe
    void *pipe_handle );        // input: pipe handle
```

#### 5.8.5.4 HDL side access

The bold text in the *input and output pipe* SystemVerilog interface declarations below shows declarations for the *non-blocking send and receive* functions which make up the API for the non-blocking operations of the HDL endpoint an input and output pipe:

```

interface scemi_input_pipe();
    parameter BYTES_PER_ELEMENT = 1;
    parameter PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS = 1;
    parameter BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS = <implementation specified>;
    parameter VISIBILITY_MODE = 0;
    parameter NOTIFICATION_THRESHOLD = BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS;

localparam PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS = PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS * BYTES_PER_ELEMENT * 8;

    ...

function int try_receive( // return: #requested elements
                        //          that are actually received
    input int byte_offset, // input: byte_offset within data array
    input int num_elements, // input: #elements to be read
    output bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] data, // output: data
    output bit eom ); // output: end-of-message marker flag
    <implementation goes here>
endfunction

function int can_receive(); // return: #elements that can be received
    <implementation goes here>
endfunction

    ...
endinterface

interface scemi_output_pipe();
    parameter BYTES_PER_ELEMENT = 1;
    parameter PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS = 1;
    parameter BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS = <implementation specified>;
    parameter VISIBILITY_MODE = 0;
    parameter NOTIFICATION_THRESHOLD = BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS;

localparam PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS = PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS * BYTES_PER_ELEMENT * 8;

    ...

function int try_send( // return: #requested elements
                     //          that are actually sent
    input int byte_offset, // input: byte_offset within data array
    input int num_elements, // input: #elements to be sent
    input bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] data, // input: data
    input bit eom ); // input: end-of-message marker flag
    <implementation goes here>
endfunction

function int can_send(); // return: #elements that can be sent
    <implementation goes here>
endfunction

    ...
endinterface

```

The parameters statically specified in both interfaces are, by definition, known at HDL compile time, and have the following meanings:

- BYTES\_PER\_ELEMENT defaults to 1 and is used to specify the number of bytes in each element of data that can be passed to the pipe.
- PAYLOAD\_MAX\_ELEMENTS defaults to 1 and is used to specify the number of elements that can be passed in any single call to a pipe send(), receive(), try\_send(), or

`try_receive()` function. This limit pertains to the HDL-side only, not the C-side. It shall be considered an error to pass a `num_elements` value to any of these calls that exceeds `PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS`.

- `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` defaults to an implementation specified value and can be overridden by the user to specify the maximum number of elements a pipe can contain at compile time. In any pipe implementation, if a non-blocking `try_send()` operation is attempted from either the C-side or the HDL-side on any pipe containing `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS`, that `try_send()` call must return a value of 0, indicating that no elements were transferred.
- `VISIBILITY_MODE` is set to 1 to place a pipe in immediate visibility mode or to 2 to place a pipe in deferred visibility mode. By default, this parameter is set to 0, denoting an illegal pipe interface with unspecified mode of operation.
- `NOTIFICATION_THRESHOLD` can be set to either 1 or `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS`. The default notification threshold for a pipe is `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS`. When the notification threshold is set to `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS`, notifications due to send and receive operations that occur when the pipe becomes full or empty, i.e. after adding `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` elements to an empty pipe or removing `BUFFER_MAX_ELEMENTS` elements from a full pipe. When the notification threshold is set to 1, notifications due to send and receive operations occur immediately.

The highlighted `try_receive()`, `can_receive()`, `try_send()` and `can_send()` functions in the `scemi_input_pipe` and `scemi_output_pipe` SystemVerilog interface declarations shown above are the non-blocking receive/send and query functions to access a transaction pipe from the HDL-side endpoint. The `try_receive()` function is called to attempt to receive transactions from an input pipe. The `try_send()` function is called to attempt to send transactions to an output pipe. The `can_receive()` function can be called to query the number of receivable elements in an input pipe. The `can_send()` function can be called to query the number of elements can could currently be taken by the pipe.

Note the following properties:

- The arguments, `num_elements`, `data`, and `eom` are identical to those described for the blocking task, `send()` described in section. 5.8.4.2.1.
- The `byte_offset` argument is the byte offset within the data buffer designated by `data`.
- The `try_send/try_receive` functions return the number of elements actually transferred.
- The `can_send/can_receive` functions return the number of elements that could be potentially be transferred.

By using the `byte_offset` argument, it is possible to create blocking functions that operate on large data buffers on the HDL-side. Even if buffers in the internal implementation are of limited size, multiple calls to the non-blocking send/receive functions can be made until all the data is transferred. This makes it easy to build blocking data transfer functions that handle buffers of large size on top of the non-blocking data transfer functions. Each call to the non-blocking function is made with the same base data buffer pointer but an increasing byte offset. Each call returns the actual number of elements transferred. This number can be translated to an increment amount for the byte offset to be passed to the next call in the loop - without changing the base data vector.

Note: the HDL-side blocking `send()` and `receive()` functions do not implement the behavior described in the previous paragraph. Each call to `send()` and `receive()` is limited to `PAYLOAD_MAX_ELEMENTS`.

#### 5.8.5.4.1 Clocked vs unlocked pipe semantics

The `IS_CLOCKED_INTF` parameter of a pipe controls how whether or not clocking is used. This parameter can have the following values:

- 0 - clocking disabled
- 1 - clocking enabled

In the case of `IS_CLOCKED_INTF == 0`, the clock input to the pipe is completely ignored. In this case the pipe is an *unclocked* pipe. It is acceptable in this case to completely omit the attachment of a clock where the pipe itself is instantiated.

In the case of `IS_CLOCKED_INTF == 1`, the clock input to the pipe is required. In this case the pipe is a *clocked* pipe. The blocking calls in the pipe are either asynchronous, or synchronized to the *posedge* or *negedge* of the attached clock depending on the setting of the `sync_control` code in any of the blocking calls.

In any of the blocking calls namely, `receive()` on an input pipe, and `send()` and `flush()` on an output pipe, the last argument of the call is a flag indicating whether that call blocks asynchronously (if `sync_control==0`) or is to sync on the *posedge* of the clock (if `sync_control==1`) or the *negedge* of the clock (if `sync_control==0`).

The default value of the `sync_control` argument is the value of the `IS_CLOCKED_INTF` parameter itself. That means that if clocking is disabled (i.e. `IS_CLOCKED_INTF==0`), the blocking calls always block asynchronously. And if clocking is enabled, then, by default, calls to the blocking calls sync on clock *posedges*.

It shall be considered an error if `sync_control` values are  $> 0$  for a non-clocked pipe (one with `IS_CLOCKED_INTF == 0`), since in this case it cannot be assumed that an input clock has been provided.

The following blocks of code can be considered a reference model for how the blocking pipe calls for a clocked and unclocked pipe can be implemented from the non-blocking ones using loops. In the case of a clocked pipe, the loop synchronizes on a clock event. In the case of an unclocked pipe, the loop synchronizes on an internally defined `async ok_to_<received|send>_event` event which is updated from the C-side via an export "DPI-C" function call when a notify occurs as per the semantics of the SCE-MI pipe state diagram.

Input pipe blocking `receive()` reference model:

```

interface scemi_input_pipe( input bit pipe_clock );
    ... // Existing parameters
    parameter IS_CLOCKED_INTF = 0;
    ...
event ok_to_receive_event; // Used for unclocked pipe sync'ing only

export "DPI-C" function scemi_pipe_hdl_notify_ok_to_receive;
function void scemi_ref_pipe_hdl_notify_ok_to_receive();
    -> ok_to_receive_event;
endfunction

bit is_in_flush_state; // Updated by implementation when in flush state.

task receive(
input  int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be read
output int num_elements_valid,    // output: #elements that are valid
output bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] data, // output: data
output bit eom,                  // output: end-of-message marker
input  int sync_control = IS_CLOCKED_INTF );
    // input: Sync control kind:
    // 0 - block asynchronously
    // 1 - sync on clock posedge
    // 2 - sync on clock negedge
// {
    automatic int num_elements_required = num_elements;
    automatic int byte_offset = 0;
    automatic int local_num_elements_valid = 0;
    automatic int elements_received;

    automatic bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] tmp_data;
    automatic bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] out_data = 0;

    if( sync_control > 0 ) begin // { Implementation for clocked pipes

        assert( IS_CLOCKED_INTF != 0 )
            else $error( "SCEMI ASSERT: receive(%m): Attempt to sync on clock
edge of non-clocked pipe." );

        elements_received = try_receive(
            byte_offset, num_elements, tmp_data, eom );
        out_data |= tmp_data;

        num_elements_required -= elements_received;
        local_num_elements_valid += elements_received;

        while( !(eom||is_in_flush_state) &&
            num_elements_required > 0 ) begin

            if( sync_control == 1 ) @( posedge pipe_clock );
            else @( negedge pipe_clock );

            byte_offset += elements_received * BYTES_PER_ELEMENT;

            elements_received = try_receive(
                byte_offset, num_elements_required, tmp_data, eom );
            out_data |= tmp_data;

            local_num_elements_valid += elements_received;
            num_elements_required -= elements_received;
        end
        num_elements_valid = local_num_elements_valid;
    end // } Implementation for clocked pipes

```

```

else if( IS_CLOCKED_INTF == 0 ) begin
// { Implementation for unlocked pipes.

    elements_received = try_receive(
        byte_offset, num_elements, tmp_data, eom );
    out_data |= tmp_data;

    num_elements_required -= elements_received;
    local_num_elements_valid += elements_received;

    while( !(eom||is_in_flush_state) &&
        num_elements_required > 0 ) begin

        @( ok_to_receive_event );

        byte_offset += elements_received * BYTES_PER_ELEMENT;

        elements_received = try_receive(
            byte_offset, num_elements_required, tmp_data, eom );
        out_data |= tmp_data;

        local_num_elements_valid += elements_received;
        num_elements_required -= elements_received;
    end
    num_elements_valid = local_num_elements_valid;

end // } Implementation for unlocked pipes.
else
    assert( 0 ) else $display(
        "ERROR: scemi_input_pipe::receive() Invalid value of
IS_CLOCKED_INTF parameter (=%0d).",
        IS_CLOCKED_INTF );
    data = out_data;
endtask // }
...
endinterface

```

Output pipe blocking send() and flush() reference model:

```

interface scemi_output_pipe( input bit pipe_clock );
... // Existing parameters
parameter IS_CLOCKED_INTF = 0;
...
event ok_to_send_event; // Used for unclocked pipe sync'ing only

export "DPI-C" function scemi_pipe_hdl_notify_ok_to_send;
function void scemi_pipe_hdl_notify_ok_to_send();
    ->ok_to_send_event;
endfunction

task send(
    input int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be written
    input bit [PAYLOAD_MAX_BITS-1:0] data,
                                     // input: data
    input bit eom,                   // input: end-of-message marker
    input int sync_control = IS_CLOCKED_INTF );
                                     // input: Sync control kind:
                                     // 0 - block asynchronously
                                     // 1 - sync on clock posedge
                                     // 2 - sync on clock negedge

    if( sync_control > 0 ) begin // Implementation for clocked pipes
        int num_elements_required = num_elements;
        int bytes_offset = 0;
        int elements_sent;

        assert( IS_CLOCKED_INTF != 0 )
            else $error( "SCEMI ASSERT: send(%m): Attempt to sync on clock
edge of non-clocked pipe." );

        elements_sent = try_send(
            bytes_offset, num_elements_required, data, eom );

        num_elements_required -= elements_sent;

        while( num_elements_required > 0 ) begin

            if( sync_control == 1 ) @( posedge pipe_clock );
            else @( negedge pipe_clock );

            bytes_offset += elements_sent * BYTES_PER_ELEMENT;

            elements_sent = try_send(
                bytes_offset, num_elements_required, data, eom );

            num_elements_required -= elements_sent;
        end
    end // Implementation for clocked pipes

    else if( IS_CLOCKED_INTF == 0 ) begin
        // Implementation for unclocked pipes.

        elements_sent = try_send(
            bytes_offset, num_elements_required, data, eom );

        num_elements_required -= elements_sent;

        while( num_elements_required > 0 ) begin

            @( ok_to_send_event );

            bytes_offset += elements_sent * BYTES_PER_ELEMENT;

```

```

        elements_sent = try_send(
            byte_offset, num_elements_required, data, eom );

        num_elements_required -= elements_sent;
    end

end // Implementation for unlocked pipes.
else
    assert( 0 ) else $display(
        "ERROR: scemi_output_pipe::send() Invalid value of
IS_CLOCKED_INTF parameter (=%0d).",
        IS_CLOCKED_INTF );
    endtask

task flush(
    input int sync_control = IS_CLOCKED_INTF );
    // input: Sync control kind:
    // 0 - block asynchronously
    // 1 - sync on clock posedge
    // 2 - sync on clock negedge

    if( sync_control ) begin // Implementation for clocked pipes
        int is_flushed;

        assert( IS_CLOCKED_INTF != 0 )
            else $error( "SCEMI ASSERT: send(%m): Attempt to sync on clock
edge of non-clocked pipe." );

        while( !try_flush() ) begin
            if( sync_control == 1 ) @( posedge pipe_clock );
            else @( negedge pipe_clock );
        end
    end // Implementation for clocked pipes
    else if( IS_CLOCKED_INTF == 0 ) begin
        // Implementation for unlocked pipes.

        while( !try_flush() ) @( ok_to_send_event );
    end // Implementation for unlocked pipes.

else
    assert( 0 ) else $display(
        "ERROR: scemi_output_pipe::flush() Invalid value of
IS_CLOCKED_INTF parameter (=%0d).",
        IS_CLOCKED_INTF );
    endtask

    ...
endinterface

```

### 5.8.5.5 Transaction pipes are deterministic

Transaction pipes are designed to guarantee deterministic time advance on the HDL side.

Determinism is guaranteed because consumption of data from an input pipe on the HDL side or production of data to an output pipe will always occur on the same clock cycles from one simulation to another or even from one implementation to another.

This property also holds true for all non-blocking pipe operations on the HDL side.

#### 5.8.5.5.1 Repeatable behaviors for pipes

Section 5.8.5.2 describes how a transaction pipe must behave individually, but does not specify how events of one pipe are processed with respect to events from other pipes and events from other sources such as time

delay events, DPI events, and other synchronization events. When there are multiple events scheduled at the same simulation time, possibly from different threads, the processing order of these simultaneous events is unspecified but repeatable. Each implementation includes its own event scheduler which must produce simulation results that are repeatable. For example, at any given simulation time, there can be:

- Events from multiple pipes
- Multiple DPI function calls
- Multiple pipe events and multiple DPI function calls

Although simulations must be repeatable for a particular implementation, user applications should not rely on a particular processing order of simultaneous events to produce its desired/expected behavior.

#### **5.8.5.6 Example reference implementations for building a complete blocking API from the non-blocking API**

The examples below are just one possible implementation of a reference model of how blocking access functions could be implemented in a given threading system. Implementations are not required to do it this way as long as they accomplish exactly the same semantics and functional operation. This means that the timing of notifications and returns from blocking calls must be identical for all implementations in accordance with the notification semantics detailed in the state diagram in section 5.8.5.1.4.

The reference implementations below assume a SystemC threading system.

##### **5.8.5.6.1 Blocking send reference implementation**

The following example shows how this can be used to implement the blocking send function on top of the non-blocking send function:

```

static void notify_ok_to_send_or_receive(
    void *context ) // input: notify context
{
    sc_event *me = (sc_event *)context;
    me->notify();
}

void scemi_pipe_c_send(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be written
    const svBitVecVal *data,   // input: data
    svBit eom )                // input: end-of-message marker flag
{
    int byte_offset = 0, elements_sent;

    while( num_elements ){
        elements_sent =
            scemi_pipe_c_try_send(
                pipe_handle, byte_offset, num_elements, data, eom );

        // if( pipe is full ) wait until OK to send more
        if( elements_sent == 0 ){
            sc_event *ok_to_send = (sc_event *)
                scemi_pipe_get_user_data( pipe_handle, NULL );

            // if( notify ok_to_send context has not yet been set up ) ...
            if( ok_to_send == NULL ){
                ok_to_send = new sc_event;
                scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback( pipe_handle,
                    notify_ok_to_send_or_receive,
                    ok_to_send, 0 /*persistent callback*/ );
                scemi_pipe_put_user_data( pipe_handle, NULL, ok_to_send);
            }
            wait( *ok_to_send );
        }
        else {
            byte_offset += elements_sent
                * scemi_pipe_get_bytes_per_element( pipe_handle );
            num_elements -= elements_sent;
        }
    }
}

```

The execution remains inside this send function repeatedly calling `scemi_pipe_c_try_send()` until all elements in an arbitrarily sized user buffer have been transferred. Each call to `scemi_pipe_c_try_send()` returns the number of elements transferred in that call.

That number is used to increment the `byte_offset` within the user's data buffer.

Between the calls, the thread waits on the `ok_to_send` event and suspends execution until there is a possibility of more room in the pipe for data.

If this event has not yet been created, it is created and passed as the context when the notify callback is registered for the first time.

#### 5.8.5.6.2 **Blocking flush reference implementation**

In a similar fashion, a blocking flush call can be implemented over the non-blocking flush call as follows:

```

void scemi_pipe_c_flush(
    void *pipe_handle )      // input: pipe handle
{
    sc_event *ok_to_flush
        = (sc_event *)scemi_pipe_get_user_data( pipe_handle, NULL );

    // if( notify ok_to_flush context has not yet been set up ) ...
    if( ok_to_flush == NULL ){
        ok_to_flush = new sc_event;
        scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback( pipe_handle,
            notify_ok_to_send_or_receive,
            ok_to_flush, 0 /*persistent callback*/ );
        scemi_pipe_put_user_data( pipe_handle, NULL, ok_to_flush);
    }

    while( !scemi_pipe_c_try_flush(pipe_handle) )
        wait( *ok_to_flush );
}

```

Note that for this implementation the notify callback function, `notify_ok_to_send_or_receive()` shown in the previous section, can be reused without modification.

To understand better how `scemi_pipe_c_try_flush()` works it should be noted that this is not always implicitly successful. By contrast, `scemi_pipe_c_flush()` is always implicitly successful.

The whole purpose of non-blocking calls in general is to test for success within a blocking function and not return if the success is not there.

The easiest way to look at *flush* is to look at *send*.

A *blocking send* is always implicitly successful. It can be implemented using a loop of *non-blocking sends* that are not always implicitly successful. The example of an implementation of `scemi_pipe_c_send()` shown above illustrates this.

The *blocking flush* works in exactly the same way.

*The non-blocking flush is probably something users should never use. It is mainly there to complete the thread-neutral API that provides full functionality for implementation of higher level thread-aware API calls that are blocking.*

#### 5.8.5.6.3 **Blocking receive reference implementation**

Finally, to complete the full blocking API reference model, the blocking receive function can be implemented over the non-blocking receive call as follows:

```

void scemi_pipe_c_receive(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be read
    int *num_elements_valid,    // output: #elements that are valid
    svBitVecVal *data,         // output: data
    svBit *eom )               // output: end-of-message marker flag (and flush)
{
    int byte_offset = 0, elements_received;
    svBit is_in_flush_state = 0;
    *num_elements_valid = 0;
    *eom = 0;

    while( num_elements ){
        is_in_flush_state = scemi_pipe_c_in_flush_state( pipe_handle);
        elements_received =
            scemi_pipe_c_try_receive( pipe_handle, byte_offset,
                                      num_elements, data, eom );
        *num_elements_valid += elements_received;

        if (*eom || is_in_flush_state)
            return;

        num_elements -= elements_received;
        if (num_elements > 0) { /* Wait until OK to receive more */
            byte_offset += elements_received
                * scemi_pipe_get_bytes_per_element( pipe_handle );
            sc_event *ok_to_receive
                = (sc_event *)scemi_pipe_get_user_data( pipe_handle, NULL );
            if( ok_to_receive == NULL ){ /* set up ok_to_receive if NULL */
                ok_to_receive = new sc_event;
                scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback( pipe_handle,
                                                notify_ok_to_send_or_receive,
                                                ok_to_receive, 0 /*persistent callback*/ );
                scemi_pipe_put_user_data( pipe_handle, NULL, ok_to_receive);
            }
            wait( *ok_to_receive );
        }
    }
}

```

The structure of the blocking receive call is similar to the blocking send except that special provision must be made to properly update the `num_elements_valid` output argument which does not exist in the send call. As described above, `num_elements_valid` can be less than `num_elements` requested in the case where the producer has done a flush.

Additionally, it is necessary to detect a condition in which a flush has occurred but the pipe is empty. This can happen if a producer wrote some elements to the pipe but did not flush until some clock cycles later. Meanwhile, if control yielded to the C side and the C-side consumed those elements, it would not have known yet that a flush was going to occur so it would have looped back around to execute the `wait( *ok_to_receive )` statement. But when the flush finally does occur, the pipe would have been empty. In this case the blocking receive function must return immediately since its original request has technically been satisfied.

#### 5.8.5.7 Query of buffer depth

By default, depth of a transaction pipe is assumed to be implementation defined. The user can query (but not override) this default on any individual pipe with the following C-side calls:

```

int scemi_pipe_get_depth( // return: current depth (in elements) of the pipe
    void *pipe_handle ); // input: pipe handle

```

Note the following properties:

- The `pipe_handle` is the handle identifying the specific pipe as derived from the unique combination of the HDL scope and the pipe ID (see section 5.8.2).
- The depth of any pipe is always expressed in elements. Each element's size is determined by the statically defined `BYTES_PER_ELEMENT` in the HDL endpoint instantiation of a pipe.

## 5.9 Direct memory interface

The SCE-MI direct memory interface (SCE-MI DMI) provides a C-side interface to directly access an HDL-side memory. This interface can increase the co-modeling efficiency by providing more controllability and observability of HDL-side memories.

To directly access an HDL-side memory, a user needs to retrieve a handle to the memory. This handle can be retrieved by the string path of the memory instance. The string path is the full path name containing the memory array variable. Once the memory handle is retrieved, a user can access the memory either by blocks of memory words or by a single memory word.

- Block Interface: get/put a block of aligned HDL memory words.
- Word Interface: read/write a memory word of an HDL memory.
- Block of Bytes Interface: get/put a number of bytes from HDL memory
- File Interface: read/write data from/to a file
- Pattern Fill Interface: Set memory locations to a desired pattern or clear a memory.

The C-side interface API consists entirely of the following set of function declarations.

Configuration and query functions:

```
void *scemi_mem_c_handle(           // return : HDL-side memory handle
    const char *hdl_path );        // input  : path to the memory

void scemi_mem_get_size(
    void *mem_handle,              // input  : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned int *width,           // output : bit-width of the memory
    unsigned long long *depth );   // output : depth of the memory
```

Block interface:

```
void scemi_mem_get_block(
    void *mem_handle,              // input  : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input  : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long num_words,    // input  : length of data
    void *data );                  // input  : user data block

void scemi_mem_put_block(
    void *mem_handle,              // input  : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input  : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long num_words,    // input  : length of data
    void *data );                  // input  : user data block
```

Word interface:

```

void scemi_mem_write_word (
    void *mem_handle,                // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input : memory address (offset)
    const svBitVecVal *data,         // input : memory word
    unsigned char *byte_enable_buf,  // input : byte enable buffer
    unsigned int flush = 0);         // input : flush write buffer

void scemi_mem_read_word (
    void *mem_handle,                // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input : memory address (offset)
    svBitVecVal *data,               // output : memory word
    unsigned long long pre_fetch);    // input : number of words to pre-fetch

```

#### Block of Bytes Interface:

```

void scemi_mem_get_block_of_bytes(
    void *mem_handle,                // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_byte_offset, // input : memory byte address
    unsigned long long num_bytes,     // input : length of data in bytes
    void *data );                   // output : user data block

void scemi_mem_put_block_of_bytes(
    void *mem_handle,                // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_byte_offset, // input : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long num_bytes,     // input : length of data
    void *data );                   // input : user data block

```

#### File Interface:

```

void scemi_mem_read_file(           // $readmem(h/b) equivalent
    void *mem_handle,               // input : HDL-side memory handle
    char *file_name,                // input : content file
    bool is_data_hex,                // input : hex vs binary data
    signed long long start_addr = -1, // input:starting word address of range
    signed long long end_addr = -1 ); // input:ending word address of range

void scemi_mem_write_file(          // $readmem(h/b) equivalent
    void *mem_handle,               // input : HDL-side memory handle
    char *file_name,                // input : content file
    bool is_data_hex,                // input : hex vs binary data
    signed long long start_addr = -1, // input:starting word address of range
    signed long long end_addr = -1 ); // input:ending word address of range

```

#### Pattern Fill Interface:

```

void scemi_mem_pattern_fill(
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long num_words, // input : # of words impacted
    const svBitVecVal *word_pattern ); // input : pattern to be applied onto
                                        // each memory word

void scemi_mem_clear(
    void *mem_handle ); // input : HDL-side memory handle

```

### 5.9.1 Block interfaces:

```

void scemi_mem_put_block (
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long mem_words, // input : length of data
    void *data ); // input : user data block

void scemi_mem_get_block(
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long num_words, // input : length of data
    void *data); // input : user data block

```

These functions do not return any error status. The standard SCE-MI compliant error handling should be used to report errors when there was an error (e.g. incorrect address, or length). These functions accesses HDL-side memories with no simulation time.

The starting address in the HDL-side memory is a normalized memory address. For example, if the HDL-side memory is defined as `reg[31:0] mem [4:16]` or `reg [31:0] mem [16:4]`, the `mem_offset` for `mem[4]` is 0.

The data type of user data should match the type of HDL memory. The implementation will interpret the `void*` data pointer based on the word type from the HDL-side as defined in the following table:

SystemVerilog Type	C Type
byte x []	char *data
shortint x []	short int *data
int x []	int *data
longint x []	long long *data
bit x []	unsigned char *data
bit [N:0] x []	unsigned char *data data[0] is x[0][7:0], data[1] is x[0][15:8] ...

If the word type of the HDL-side memory is of C-compatible types, then the C-side should have the corresponding C-type layout.

If the word type of the HDL-side memory is of bit-vector type, then the C-side will be using byte-alignment format with the LSB of the first memory word to be the first in the data byte array.

## 5.9.2 Word interface

```
void scemi_mem_write_word (
    void *mem_handle,                // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input : memory address (offset)
    const svBitVecVal *data,         // input : memory word
    unsigned char *byte_enable_buf,  // input : byte enable buffer
    // byte_enable_buf == NULL, all bytes are enabled
    // byte_enable_buf != NULL, value 0xff in
    // byte_enable_buf[k] enables the kth byte of
    // memory word, value 0 disables the kth byte
    //k ==0 control LSB (bit [7:0])
    unsigned int flush);             // input : 1: flush write buffer

void scemi_mem_read_word (
    void *mem_handle,                // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input : buffer address
    svBitVecVal *data,               // output : memory word
    unsigned long long pre_fetch);    // input : pre-fetch number of words
```

These functions do not return any error status. The standard SCE-MI compliant error handling should be used to report errors when there was an error (e.g. incorrect address, or length).

Semantics of these functions are immediate without any delay. The implementation can take advantage of the alternating SCE-MI semantics and do write buffering and read pre-fetching to improve performance. However, the use of buffering and pre-fetching should not change the immediate semantics. A read transaction following a write transaction to the same location should always get the latest value. The immediate semantics is also applied to the block interface.

The user can use the flush argument in the write function to guide write buffer flushing. For example:

```
unsigned long long start_addr = 5000;
svBitVecVal bvec[10];
for (i=0; i< 1000; i++)
{
    generate_data(bvec);
    scemi_mem_write_word(hdl, start_addr + i, bvec, 0, (i==999));
}
```

In this example, the user writes 1000 words to the HDL-side memory and signals the flush at the end. The flush is just a hint to the buffering. From the user's point of view, all write transactions are executed at the return of each call and will see no functional difference based on the value of this argument. An implementation is free to ignore the argument.

The user can use the pre\_fetch argument in the read function to hint about a sequential access to a memory block. This is a guide to the implementation only. The implementation must guarantee that there will be no change in functionality based on the value of the pre-fetch argument, and the user will never see any difference except a potential change in performance. An implementation is free to ignore this argument. For example:

```
unsigned long long pre_fetch = 1000; //pre-fetch 1000 words
unsigned long long start_addr = 5000;

for (i=0; i< 1000; i++)
{
    scemi_mem_read_word(hdl, start_addr + i, bvec, pre_fetch);
    process (bvec);
    pre_fetch = 0;
}
```

In this example, the user reads 1000 words from a block of HDL-side memory and signals the intention with the pre\_fetch = 1000 at the first read transaction. After the first time around the loop, pre\_fetch is reset.

### 5.9.3 Block of bytes interface

```
void scemi_mem_get_block_of_bytes(
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_byte_offset, // input : memory byte address
    unsigned long long num_bytes, // input : length of data in bytes
    void *data );              // output : user data block

void scemi_mem_put_block_of_bytes(
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_byte_offset, // input : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long num_bytes, // input : length of data
    void *data );              // input : user data block
```

These functions operate the same as the Word Interface except that they pertain to an arbitrary block of bytes that can be read or written to the memory. They do not have `pre_fetch` or `flush` characteristics of the Word interface.

The array passed in is assumed to be little endian and mapped to a memory with the data width that is a multiple of bytes. In other cases, an error will be recorded. If those restrictions cannot be met, the word interface should be used.

### 5.9.4 File interface

```
void scemi_mem_read_file(           // $readmem(h/b) equivalent
    void *mem_handle,               // input : HDL-side memory handle
    char *file_name,                // input : content file
    bool is_data_hex,               // input : hex vs binary data
    signed long long start_addr = -1, // input:starting word address of range
    signed long long end_addr = -1 ); // input:ending word address of range

void scemi_mem_write_file(          // $readmem(h/b) equivalent
    void *mem_handle,               // input : HDL-side memory handle
    char *file_name,                // input : content file
    bool is_data_hex,               // input : hex vs binary data
    signed long long start_addr = -1, // input:starting word address of range
    signed long long end_addr = -1 ); // input:ending word address of range
```

These functions are used to read and write the contents of memory from and to a file. They very closely follow the SystemVerilog `$readmemh()`, `$readmemb()` functions as defined in the LRM. The functions execute in zero simulation time and return no status.

The `file_name` argument is a null terminated string that provides a legal file name that conforms to the limitations of the operating system the application is running on. The file will be opened for READ or WRITE access depending on call.

The `is_data_hex` argument can be 1 or 0. A value of 1 indicates that the data in the file is to be interpreted as having hexadecimal radix equivalent to `$readmemh()`, `$writememh()` semantics. A value of 0 indicates that the data in the file is to be interpreted as having binary radix and equivalent to `$readmemb()`, `$writememb()` semantics.

The arguments `start_addr` and `end_addr` denote the starting address and ending address respectively of the memory range to be updated. The values of these parameters have exactly the same meaning as their counterparts in the `$readmem(h/b)`, `$writemem(h/b)` functions in the SystemVerilog LRM. If values of -1 are given for either parameter, this is equivalent to calling the variation `$readmem(h/b)`, `$writemem(h/b)` without these parameters supplied and thus has the same semantic meaning as described in the SystemVerilog LRM.

## 5.9.5 Pattern fill interface

```
void scemi_mem_pattern_fill(  
    void *mem_handle,                // input : HDL-side memory handle  
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input : memory address (offset)  
    unsigned long long num_words,     // input : # of words impacted  
    const svBitVecVal *word_pattern ); // input : pattern to be applied onto  
                                        //         each memory word  
  
void scemi_scemi_mem_clear(  
    void *mem_handle );              // input : HDL-side memory handle
```

These functions are used to initialize a block of memory defined by `mem_handle`. They execute in zero time and provide no return status.

If a particular pattern is desired in each word of the memory, the `scemi_mem_pattern_fill` function deposits the pattern contained in `word_pattern` into the next `num_words` locations starting from `word_offset`.

The `word_pattern` parameter is assumed to have a width exactly matching the data width of the memory to be updated.

The `scemi_mem_clear` function sets all locations of the memory to zero.

## 5.10 Register access interface

The SCE-MI 2 standard provides a C-API to access HDL-side registers which can include single or multi-bit registers.

Specifically the register access API leverages the existing, standardized register API that is currently part of the UVM standard (see [B7] in Appendix H):

- The SCE-MI API will use, verbatim, the `uvm_hdl_*` calls defined in the UVM HDL back door access-layer of the Accellera UVM standard for register access. This standard defines a set of DPI based support routines for providing back door register access (see the section in the UVM standard referring to “UVM HDL back door access support routines”).
- The UVM standard implements these functions using a reference implementation underneath based on the standard VPI API. Therefore, by making the SCE-MI standard adopt this API verbatim, current simulators that provide the UVM HDL back door access-layer will automatically be SCE-MI compliant.
- For the SCE-MI version, vendors can substitute other implementations underneath the `uvm_hdl_*` calls as an alternative to the VPI implementation that is there now while keeping the API function definitions intact and allow existing applications to use them with no changes.
- Although originally designed to provide access to SystemVerilog HVL (SV-HVL) UVM testbenches, the basic C API can also be used directly by C, C++, or SystemC HVL testbenches. This can be done by linking a compiled C object file directly into C applications without using any other parts of the UVM package. This object file shall contain the implementations of the DPI based register access API as defined in the UVM standard and listed below.
- Note that even SV-HVL UVM applications can continue to work using the alternate implementations of the underlying UVM HDL back door access-layer. Thus this API will support both C-HVL and SV-HVL standardized register access.

The register access functions are listed here:

```
//-----  
// Register access functions  
//  
// uvm_hdl_check_path()      - Check if signal denoted by path is present  
// uvm_hdl_read()           - Get value of signal denoted by given path  
// uvm_hdl_deposit()        - Set value of signal denoted by given path  
// uvm_hdl_force()          - Force value of signal denoted by given path  
// uvm_hdl_release()        - Release signal denoted by given path  
// uvm_hdl_release_and_read() - Release signal denoted by given path  
//                               and read value  
//  
//  
// Return value for all above functions: 0 unsuccessful, 1 successful  
//-----  
  
extern "C" {  
    int uvm_hdl_check_path( const char *path );  
    int uvm_hdl_read( const char *path, p_vpi_vecval value );  
    int uvm_hdl_deposit( const char *path, p_vpi_vecval value );  
    int uvm_hdl_force( const char *path, p_vpi_vecval value );  
    int uvm_hdl_release( const char *path );  
    int uvm_hdl_release_and_read( const char *path, p_vpi_vecval value );  
}
```

## 5.11 Stopping a simulation

SCE-MI allows the HVL-side application to stop a simulation. For any SCE-MI implementation that already supports VPI, no additional work is needed to support stopping simulations.

For SCE-MI implementations that do not support VPI they must support at least the `vpi_control()` call as defined in the SystemVerilog standard in *at least the way described below*.

The `vpi_control()` call can be used to stop a simulation:

```
PLI_INT32 vpi_control( PLI_INT32 operation, varargs );
```

In the SystemVerilog standard, `operation` denotes the possible control operations as defined by `#define` constants in `vpi_user.h`. These are `vpiStop`, `vpiFinish`, `vpiReset`, and `vpiSetInteractiveScope`.

For SCE-MI compliance, only `vpiFinish` needs to be supported. This operation will cause the simulation to terminate.

For the `vpiFinish` operation, the `varargs` argument can be 0, 1, or 2 as described in SystemVerilog. This argument specifies the type of information that is to be printed to the simulation transcript upon termination. For SCE-MI compliance only value 0 needs to be supported which says to print nothing.

The `vpi_control()` call returns a `PLI_INT32` value indicating the status of the operation which is 1 for successful and 0 for failure.

The following is an example of a SCE-MI compliant `vpi_control()` call,

```
PLI_INT32 status;  
status = vpi_control( vpiFinish, 0 );  
...
```

## Appendix A: Example using dynamic callbacks

*(Informative)*

The example below uses dynamic callbacks to implement a user-defined blocking send function on top of the non-blocking `scemi_pipe_c_try_send` function.

```
static void notify_ok_to_send (
    void *context ) // input: notify context
{
    sc_event *me = (sc_event *)context;
    me->notify();
}

void my_scemi_pipe_c_send(
    void *pipe_handle,          // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,          // input: #elements to be written
    const svBitVecVal *data,   // input: data
    svBit eom )               // input: end-of-message marker flag
{
    int byte_offset = 0, elements_sent;
    int pipe_depth = scemi_pipe_get_depth( pipe_handle );
    while( num_elements ){
        elements_sent =
            scemi_pipe_c_try_send(
                pipe_handle, byte_offset, num_elements, data, eom );
        num_elements -= elements_sent;
        if( elements_sent > 0 ){ /* wait till empty pipe or enough space */
            sc_event *ok_to_send = (sc_event *)
                scemi_pipe_get_user_data( pipe_handle, my_scemi_pipe_c_send );
            if( ok_to_send == NULL ) {
                ok_to_send = new sc_event;
                scemi_pipe_put_user_data( pipe_handle, my_scemi_pipe_c_send,
                    ok_to_send);
            }
            scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback( pipe_handle,
                notify_ok_to_send, ok_to_send,
                (num_elements > pipe_depth) ? pipe_depth : num_elements );
            byte_offset += elements_sent
                * scemi_pipe_get_bytes_per_element( pipe_handle );
            wait( *ok_to_send );
        }
    }
}
```

In `my_scemi_pipe_c_send`, when the pipe does not have enough room to fulfill the send request, a one-time dynamic notification callback will be registered to specify the ideal callback condition. That is, when the pipe has enough room to fulfill the send request, or when the pipe becomes empty for requests that are larger than the pipe depth. This blocking send implementation allows an application to be notified whenever the callback condition is met, possibly earlier and no later than the pipe state diagram dictates.

## Appendix B: VHDL SCE-MI macros package

*(Informative)*

The following package can be used to supply SCE-MI macro component declarations to an application. Compile this package into the library SCE-MI and include it in the application code as:

```
library SceMi;
use SceMi.SceMiMacros.all;
```

Here is the source code for the package:

```
library ieee;
use ieee.std_logic_1164.all;

package SceMiMacros is

    component SceMiMessageInPort
        generic( PortWidth: natural );
        port(
            ReceiveReady : in std_logic;
            TransmitReady : out std_logic;
            Message       : out std_logic_vector( PortWidth-1 downto 0 ) );
        end component;

    component SceMiMessageOutPort
        generic( PortWidth: natural; PortPriority: natural:=10 );
        port(
            TransmitReady : in std_logic;
            ReceiveReady  : out std_logic;
            Message       : in std_logic_vector( PortWidth-1 downto 0 ) );
        end component;

    component SceMiClockPort
        generic(
            ClockNum          : natural := 1;
            RatioNumerator   : natural := 1;
            RatioDenominator : natural := 1;
            DutyHi            : natural := 0;
            DutyLo           : natural := 100;
            Phase             : natural := 0;
            ResetCycles      : natural := 8 );
        port(
            Cclock : out std_logic;
            Creset : out std_logic );
        end component;

    component SceMiClockControl
        generic( ClockNum: natural := 1 );
        port(
            Uclock,
            Ureset           : out std_logic;
            ReadyForCclock  : in std_logic;
            CclockEnabled   : out std_logic;
            ReadyForCclockNegEdge : in std_logic;
            CclockNegEdgeEnabled : out std_logic );
        end component;
end SceMiMacros;
```

# Appendix C: Macro-based multi-clock hardware side interface example

(Informative)

Figure C.1 shows the top level structure of a simple multi-clock, multi-transactor example.

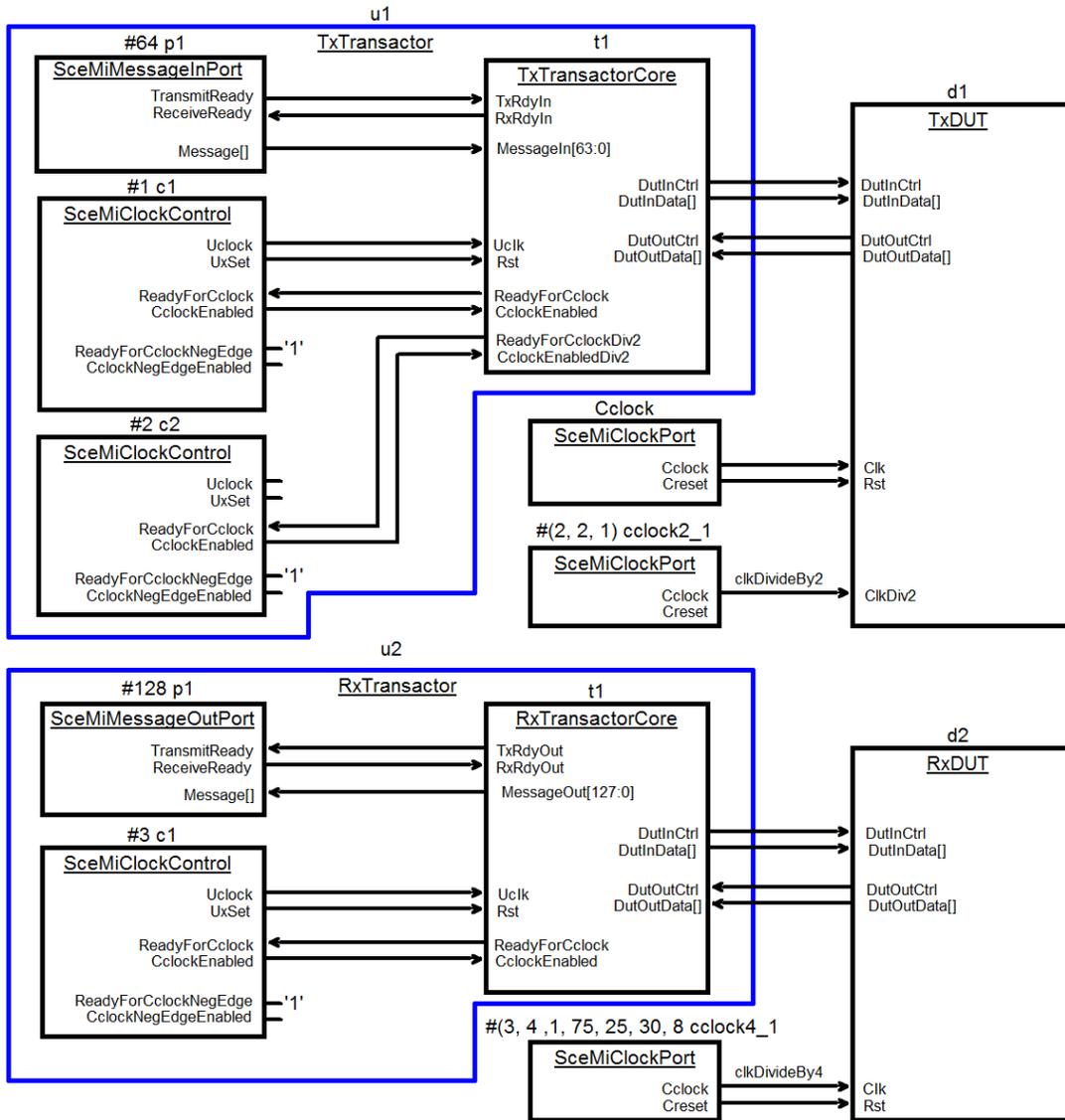


Figure C.1 Multi-clock, multi-transactor example

This design demonstrates the following points.

Three ClockPort instances define clocks named `cclock`, `cclock2_1`, and `cclock4_1`.

- Because no parameters are given with the `SceMiClockPort` instance `cclock`, all default parameters are used. This means `cclock` has a `ClockNum=1`, a clock ratio of `1/1`, a *don't care duty cycle*, a phase shift of `0`, and the controlled reset it supplies has an active duration of eight controlled clock cycles.

- The `cclock2_1` instance of `SceMiClockPort` overrides the first three parameters and leaves the rest at their default values. This means `cclock2_1` has a `ClockNum=2`, a clock ratio of  $2/1$  (i.e., a “divide-by-2” clock), a duty cycle of 50%, a phase shift of 0, and an eight clock-cycle reset duration.
- The `cclock4_1` instance of `SceMiClockPort` has a `ClockNum=3`, a clock ratio of  $4/1$  (i.e., a “divide-by-4” clock), a duty cycle of 75%, a phase shift of 30% of the clock period, and an eight clock-cycle reset duration.
- The `TxTransactor` transactor model, named `Bridge.u1`, controls clocks `cclock` and `cclock2_1` since its `SceMiClockControl` macro instances have `ClockNum=1` and `ClockNum=2`, respectively.
- This `TxTransactor` model interfaces to a message input port called `p1` which is parametrized to a bit-width of 64.
- The `RxTransactor` transactor model, named `Bridge.u2`, controls clock `cclock4_1` since its `SceMiClockControl` macro instance has `ClockNum=3`.
- This `RxTransactor` model interfaces to a message input port called `p1` which is parametrized to a bit-width of 128.

The following listing shows some of the VHDL source code for the above schematic.

```

library ieee;
use ieee.std_logic_1164.all;
library SceMi;
use SceMi.SceMiMacros.all;

entity Bridge is end;
architecture Structural of Bridge is
    component TxTransactor is
        port(
            DutInCtrl: out std_logic;
            DutInData: out std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
            DutOutCtrl: in std_logic;
            DutOutData: in std_logic_vector(31 downto 0) );
        end component TxTransactor;
    component TxDUT is
        port(
            DutInCtrl: in std_logic;
            DutInData: in std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
            DutOutCtrl: out std_logic;
            DutOutData: out std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
            Clk, Rst, ClkDiv2: in std_logic );
        end component TxDUT;
    component RxTransactor is
        port(
            DutInCtrl: out std_logic;
            DutInData: out std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
            DutOutCtrl: in std_logic;
            DutOutData: in std_logic_vector(31 downto 0) );
        end component RxTransactor;
    component RxDUT is
        port(
            DutInCtrl: in std_logic;
            DutInData: in std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
            DutOutCtrl: out std_logic;
            DutOutData: out std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
            Clk, Rst: in std_logic );
        end component RxDUT;
    signal txDutInCtrl, txDutOutCtrl: std_logic;
    signal txDutInData, txDutOutData: std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
    signal rxDutInCtrl, rxDutOutCtrl: std_logic;
    signal rxDutInData, rxDutOutData: std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
    signal cclock, creset, clkDivideBy2, clkDivideBy4
        cresetDivideBy4: std_logic;
begin
    u1: TxTransactor port map( txDutInCtrl, txDutInData, txDutOutCtrl,
        txDutOutData );
    d1: TxDUT port map( txDutInCtrl, txDutInData, txDutOutCtrl,
        txDutOutData, cclock, creset, clkDivideBy2 );
    cclock: SceMiClockPort port map( cclock, creset );
    cclock2_1: SceMiClockPort
        generic map( 2, 2, 1, 50, 50, 0, 8 )
        port map( clkDivideBy2, open );
    u2: RxTransactor port map( txDutInCtrl, txDutInData, txDutOutCtrl,
        txDutOutData );
    d2: RxDUT port map( txDutInCtrl, txDutInData, txDutOutCtrl,
        txDutOutData, clkDivideBy4, cresetDivideBy4 );
    cclock4_1: SceMiClockPort
        generic map( 3, 4, 1, 75, 25, 30, 8 )
        port map( clkDivideBy2, open );
end;

library ieee;
use ieee.std_logic_1164.all;

```

```

library SceMi;
use SceMi.SceMiMacros.all;

entity TxTransactor is
  port(
    DutInCtrl:  out std_logic;
    DutInData:  out std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
    DutOutCtrl: in  std_logic;
    DutOutData: in  std_logic_vector(31 downto 0) );
  end;
architecture Structural of TxTransactor is
  component TxTransactorCore is
    port(
      TxRdyIn: in std_logic;          RxRdyIn: out std_logic;
      Message: in std_logic(63 downto 0);
      DutInCtrl:  out std_logic;
      DutInData:  out std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
      DutOutCtrl: in  std_logic;
      DutOutData: in  std_logic_vector(31 downto 0) );
      Uclk, Rst: in std_logic;
      ReadyForCclock:  in std_logic;
      CclockEnabled:   out std_logic;
      ReadyForCclockDiv2: in std_logic;
      CclockEnabledDiv2: out std_logic;
    end component TxTransactor;
  signal transmitReady, receiveReady: std_logic;
  signal message: std_logic_vector(63 downto 0);
  signal uclock, ureset: std_logic;
  signal readyForCclock, cclockEnabled: std_logic;
  signal readyForCclockDiv2, cclockEnabledDiv2;
begin
  t1: TxTransactorCore port map(
    transmitReady, receiveReady, message,
    DutInCtrl, DutInData, DutOutCtrl, DutOutData,
    uclock, ureset,
    readyForCclock, cclockEnabled, readyForCclockDiv2,
    cclockEnabledDiv2 );
  p1: SceMiMessageInputPort
    generic map( 64 )
    port map( transmitReady, receiveReady, message );
  c1: SceMiClockControl
    port map( uclock, ureset, readyForCclock, cclockEnabled,
    '1', open );
  c2: SceMiClockControl
    generic map( 2 )
    port map( open, open, readyForCclockDiv2, cclockEnabledDiv2,
    '1', open );
end;

```

# Appendix D: Using transaction pipes compatibly with Accellera Systems Initiative's SystemC-TLM applications

(informative)

## D.1 TLM interfaces

The transaction pipes described in this document are designed to dovetail cleanly with Accellera Systems Initiative's SystemC-TLM models. They support the following basic interface operations found in TLM put interfaces and TLM get interfaces which are summarized in the following table:

Operations	TLM Put Interfaces ( <code>tlm_put_if&lt;T&gt;</code> )	TLM Get Interfaces ( <code>tlm_get_if&lt;T&gt;</code> )
<b>Blocking Ops</b>		
Data transfer	<code>::put()</code>	<code>::get()</code>
<b>Non-Blocking Ops</b>		
Data transfer	<code>::nb_put()</code>	<code>::nb_get()</code>
Query	<code>::nb_can_put()</code>	<code>::nb_can_get()</code>
Notify	<code>::ok_to_put()</code>	<code>::ok_to_get()</code>

A typical TLM *put interface* is derived from the following abstract class `tlm_put_if<T>`:

```
template < typename T >
class tlm_blocking_put_if : public virtual sc_interface {
public:
    virtual void put( const T &t ) = 0;
};

template < typename T >
class tlm_nonblocking_put_if : public virtual sc_interface {
public:
    virtual bool nb_put( const T &t ) = 0;
    virtual bool nb_can_put( tlm_tag<T> *t = 0 ) const = 0;
    virtual const sc_event &ok_to_put( tlm_tag<T> *t = 0 ) const = 0;
};

template < typename T >
class tlm_put_if :
    public virtual tlm_blocking_put_if< T > ,
    public virtual tlm_nonblocking_put_if< T > {};
```

A typical TLM *get interface* is derived from the following abstract class `tlm_get_if<T>`:

```

template < typename T >
class tlm_blocking_get_if : public virtual sc_interface {
public:
    virtual T get( tlm_tag<T> *t = 0 ) = 0;
    virtual void get( T &t ) { t = get(); }
};

template < typename T >
class tlm_nonblocking_get_if : public virtual sc_interface {
public:
    virtual bool nb_get( T &t ) = 0;
    virtual bool nb_can_get( tlm_tag<T> *t = 0 ) const = 0;
    virtual const sc_event &ok_to_get( tlm_tag<T> *t = 0 ) const = 0;
};

template < typename T >
class tlm_get_if :
    public virtual tlm_blocking_get_if< T > ,
    public virtual tlm_nonblocking_get_if< T > {};

```

## D.2 Example of Accellera Systems Initiative's SystemC-TLM compliant proxy model that uses transaction pipes

This proxy class is a derivation of the basic TLM put interface `class tlm_put_if<T>` described in the previous section. Implementations of the required functions of that interface are shown. The example shows how the SCE-MI 2 transaction pipe access functions provide all the necessary functionality to interface this proxy model to the HDL side.

```

//
// class PipelineIngressProxy \_____ / johnS 2-5-2006
//
// The PipelineIngressProxy module consumes data received over a data channel
// from producer sends it to the Pipeline DUT on the SystemVerilog side by passing
// transactions over a transaction input pipe to the
// PipelineIngressTransactor.
//-----

template< typename T, const int NUM_WORDS >
class PipelineIngressProxy :
    public sc_module,
    public virtual tlm_put_if<T>
{
public:
    sc_export< tlm_put_if< T > > put_export;

private:
    void *m_pipe_handle;
    sc_event m_ok_to_put;

    static void notify_ok_to_put(
        void *context ){ // input: notify context
        sc_event *me = (sc_event *)context;
        me->notify();
    }

    void pack( const T &t, svBitVecVal pipe_data[] );

public:
    PipelineIngressProxy( sc_module_name name,
        const char *transactor_name )
        : sc_module(name)
    {
        // Bind to channel.
        put_export( *this );

        // Establish binding to transaction input pipe.
        m_pipe_handle = scemi_pipe_c_handle( transactor_name );

        // Register notify "ok to put" callback
        scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback(
            m_pipe_handle, notify_ok_to_put, &m_ok_to_put );
    }

    void put( const T &t ){
        svBitVecVal pipe_data[ SV_PACKED_DATA_NELEMS(NUM_WORDS*32) ];

        pack( t, pipe_data );

        if( !nb_can_put() )
            wait( m_ok_to_put );

        assert(
            scemi_pipe_c_try_send( m_pipe_handle, 0, 1, pipe_data, 0 ) );
    }

    bool nb_put( const T &t ) {
        if( !nb_can_put() )
            return false;

        svBitVecVal pipe_data[ SV_PACKED_DATA_NELEMS(NUM_WORDS*32) ];
    }
}

```

```

    pack( t, pipe_data );

    assert(
        scemi_pipe_c_try_send( m_pipe_handle, 0, 1, pipe_data, 0 ) );

    return true;
}

bool nb_can_put( tlm_tag<T> *t = 0 ) const {
    return scemi_pipe_c_can_send( m_pipe_handle) == 1; }

const sc_event &ok_to_put( tlm_tag<T> *t = 0 ) const {
    return m_ok_to_put; }
};

void PipelineIngressProxy<MyType,MyType::NUM_WORDS>::pack(
    const MyType &t, svBitVecVal pipe_data[] )
{
    pipe_data[0] = t.Count;

    // Coerce double to long long integer.
    long long ll_data = (long long)t.Data;

    pipe_data[1] = (svBitVecVal)ll_data;
    ll_data >>= 32;
    pipe_data[2] = (svBitVecVal)ll_data;

    pipe_data[3] = t.Status;
}

```

## Appendix E: Sample header files for the macro-based SCE-MI *(informative)*

The ANSI-C file should be used without modification. For the C++ header, extensions are allowable but no modifications can be made to any of the contents that are provided.

## E.1 C++

```
//
// Copyright © 2003-2007 by Accellera
// scemi.h - SCE-MI C++ Interface
//
#ifndef INCLUDED_SCEMI
#define INCLUDED_SCEMI

class SceMiParameters;
class SceMiMessageData;
class SceMiMessageInPortProxy;
class SceMiMessageOutPortProxy;

#define SCEMI_MAJOR_VERSION 2
#define SCEMI_MINOR_VERSION 0
#define SCEMI_PATCH_VERSION 0
#define SCEMI_VERSION_STRING "2.0.0"

/* 32 bit unsigned word type for building and reading messages */
typedef unsigned int SceMiU32;

/* 64 bit unsigned word used for CycleStamps */
typedef unsigned long long SceMiU64;

extern "C" {
typedef int (*SceMiServiceLoopHandler)(void* context, int pending);
};

/*
 * struct SceMiEC - SceMi Error Context
 */

typedef enum {
    SceMiOK,
    SceMiError
} SceMiErrorType;

typedef struct {
    const char* Culprit;    /* The offending function */
    const char* Message;   /* Descriptive message describing problem */
    SceMiErrorType Type;   /* Error code describing the nature of the error */
    int Id;                /* A code to uniquely identify each error */
} SceMiEC;

extern "C" {
typedef void (*SceMiErrorHandler)(void* context, SceMiEC* ec);
};

/*
 * struct SceMiIC - SceMi Informational Message Context
 */

typedef enum {
    SceMiInfo,
    SceMiWarning,
    SceMiNonFatalError
} SceMiInfoType;

typedef struct {
    const char* Originator;
    const char* Message;
};
```

```

        SceMiInfoType Type;
        int Id;
    } SceMiIC;

extern "C" {
typedef void (*SceMiInfoHandler)(void* context, SceMiIC* ic);
};

/*
 * struct SceMiMessageInPortBinding
 *
 * Description
 * -----
 * This structure defines a tray of callback functions that support
 * propagation of message input readiness back to the software.
 *
 * If an input ready callback is registered (optionally) on a given
 * input port, the port will dispatch the callback whenever becomes
 * ready for more input.
 *
 * Note: All callbacks must take their data and return promptly as they
 * are called possibly deep down in a non-preemptive thread. Typically,
 * the callback might to some minor manipulation to the context object
 * then return and let a suspended thread resume and do the main process-ing
 * of the received transaction.
 */

extern "C" {
typedef struct {
    /*
     * This is the user's context object pointer.
     * The application is free to use this pointer for any purposes it
     * wishes. Neither the class SceMi nor class MessageInputPortProxy do
     * anything with this pointer other than store it and pass it when
     * calling functions.
     */
    void* Context;

    /*
     * Receive a response transaction. This function is called when data
     * from the message output port arrives. This callback acts as a proxy
     * for the message output port of the transactor.
     */
    void (*IsReady)(
        void* context);

    /*
     * This function is called from the MessageInputPortProxy destructor
     * to notify the user code that the reference to the 'context' pointer
     * has been deleted.
     */
    int (*Close)(
        void* context);
} SceMiMessageInPortBinding;
};

/*
 * struct SceMiMessageOutPortBinding
 *
 * Description
 * -----

```

```

* This structure defines a tray of callback functions are passed to the class
* SceMi when the application model binds to a message output port proxy and
* which are called on message receipt and close notification. It is the means
* by which the MessageOutputPort forwards received transactions to the C model.
*
* Note: All callbacks must take their data and return promptly as they
* are called possibly deep down in a non-preemptive thread. Typically,
* the callback might do some minor manipulation to the context object
* then return and let a suspended thread resume and do the main processing
* of the received transaction.
*
* Additionally, the message data passed into the receive callback is
* not guaranteed to remain the same once the callback returns. All
* data therein then must be processed while inside the callback.
*/

extern "C" {
typedef struct {
    /*
    * This is the user's context object pointer.
    * The application is free to use this pointer for any purposes it
    * wishes. Neither the class SceMi nor class SceMiMessageOutPortProxy do
    * anything with this pointer other than store it and pass it when
    * calling callback functions Receive and Close.
    */
    void* Context;

    /*
    * Receive a response transaction. This function is called when data
    * from the message output port arrives. This callback acts as a proxy
    * for the message output port of the transactor.
    */
    void (*Receive)(
        void* context,
        const SceMiMessageData* data);

    /*
    * This function is called from the MessageOutputPortProxy destructor
    * to notify the user code that the reference to the 'context' pointer
    * has been deleted.
    */
    int (*Close)(
        void* context);

} SceMiMessageOutPortBinding;
};

class SceMiParameters {
public:
    // CREATORS

    //
    // This constructor initializes some parameters from the
    // parameters file in the config directory, and some other
    // parameters directly from the config file.
    //
    SceMiParameters(
        const char* paramsfile,
        SceMiEC* ec = 0);

    ~SceMiParameters();
};

```

```

// ACCESSORS

//
// This accessor returns the number of instances of objects of
// the specified objectKind name.
//
unsigned int NumberOfObjects(
    const char* objectKind,    // Input: Object kind name.
    SceMiEC* ec = 0) const; // Input/Output: Error status.

//

// These accessors return an integer or string attribute values of the
// given object kind. It is considered an error if the index > number
// returned by ::NumberOfObjects() or the objectKind and attributeName
// arguments are unrecognized.
//
int AttributeIntegerValue(
    const char* objectKind,    // Input: Object kind name.
    unsigned int index,        // Input: Index of object instance.
    const char* attributeName, // Input: Name of attribute being read.
    SceMiEC* ec = 0) const;   // Input/Output: Error status.

const char* AttributeStringValue(
    const char* objectKind,    // Input: Object kind name.
    unsigned int index,        // Input: Index of object instance.
    const char* attributeName, // Input: Name of attribute being read.
    SceMiEC* ec = 0) const;   // Input/Output: Error status.

// MANIPULATORS

//
// These manipulators override an integer or string attribute values of the
// given object kind. It is considered an error if the index > number
// returned by ::NumberOfObjects(). or the objectKind and attributeName
// arguments are unrecognized.
//
void OverrideAttributeIntegerValue(
    const char* objectKind,    // Input: Object kind name.
    unsigned int index,        // Input: Index of object instance.
    const char* attributeName, // Input: Name of attribute being read.
    int value,                 // Input: New integer value of attribute.
    SceMiEC* ec = 0);         // Input/Output: Error status.

void OverrideAttributeStringValue(
    const char* objectKind,    // Input: Object kind name.
    unsigned int index,        // Input: Index of object instance.
    const char* attributeName, // Input: Name of attribute being read.
    const char* value,         // Input: New string value of attribute.
    SceMiEC* ec = 0);         // Input/Output: Error status.
};

//
// class SceMiMessageInPortProxy
//
// Description
// -----
// The class SceMiMessageInPortProxy presents a C++ proxy for a transactor
// message input port. The input channel to that transactor is represented
// by the Send() method.
//

```

```

class SceMiMessageInPortProxy {

public:
    // ACCESSORS
    const char* TransactorName() const;
    const char* PortName() const;
    unsigned int PortWidth() const;

    //
    // This method sends message to the transactor input port.
    //
    void Send(
        const SceMiMessageData &data, // Message payload to be sent.
        SceMiEC* ec = 0);

    //
    // Replace port binding.
    // The binding argument represents a callback function and context
    // pointer tray (see comments in scemicommtypes.h for struct
    // SceMiMessageInPortBinding).
    //
    void ReplaceBinding(
        const SceMiMessageInPortBinding* binding = 0,
        SceMiEC* ec = 0);
};

//
// class SceMiMessageOutPortProxy
//
// Description
// -----
// The class SceMiMessageOutPortProxy presents a C++ proxy for a transactor
// message output port.
//
class SceMiMessageOutPortProxy {
public:
    // ACCESSORS
    const char* TransactorName() const;
    const char* PortName() const;
    unsigned int PortWidth() const;

    //
    // Replace port binding.
    // The binding argument represents a callback function and context
    // pointer tray (see comments in scemicommtypes.h for struct
    // SceMiMessageOutPortBinding).
    //
    void ReplaceBinding(
        const SceMiMessageOutPortBinding* binding = 0,
        SceMiEC* ec = 0);
};

//
// class SceMiMessageData
//
// Description
// -----
// The class SceMiMessageData represents a fixed length array of data which
// is transferred between models.
//
class SceMiMessageData {
public:

```

```

// CREATORS

//
// Constructor: The message in port proxy for which
// this message data object must be suitably sized.
//
SceMiMessageData(
    const SceMiMessageInPortProxy& messageInPortProxy,
    SceMiEC* ec = 0);

~SceMiMessageData();

// Return size of vector in bits
unsigned int WidthInBits() const;

// Return size of array in 32 bit words.
unsigned int WidthInWords() const;

void Set( unsigned i, SceMiU32 word, SceMiEC* ec = 0);

void SetBit( unsigned i, int bit, SceMiEC* ec = 0);

void SetBitRange(
    unsigned int i, unsigned int range, SceMiU32 bits, SceMiEC* ec = 0);

SceMiU32 Get( unsigned i, SceMiEC* ec = 0) const;

int GetBit( unsigned i, SceMiEC* ec = 0) const;

SceMiU32 GetBitRange(
    unsigned int i, unsigned int range, SceMiEC* ec = 0) const;

SceMiU64 CycleStamp() const;
};

//
// class SceMi
//
// Description
// -----
// This file defines the public interface to class SceMi.
//
class SceMi {
public:

    //
    // Check version string against supported versions.
    // Returns -1 if passed string not supported.
    // Returns interface version # if it is supported.
    // This interface version # can be passed to SceMi::Init().
    //
    static int Version(
        const char* versionString);

    //
    // This function wraps constructor of class SceMi. If an instance
    // of class SceMi has been established on a prior call to the
    // SceMi::Init() function, that pointer is returned since a single
    // instance of class SceMi is reusable among all C models.
    // Returns NULL if error occurred, check ec for status or register
    // an error callback.
    //

```

```

// The caller is required to pass in the version of SceMi it is
// expecting to work with. Call SceMi::Version to convert a version
// string to an integer suitable for this version's "version" argument.
//
// The caller is also expected to have instantiated a SceMiParameters
// object, and pass a pointer to that object into this function.
//
static SceMi*
Init(
    int version,
    const SceMiParameters* parameters,
    SceMiEC* ec = 0);

//
// Shut down the SCEMI interface.
//
static void
Shutdown(
    SceMi* mct,
    SceMiEC* ec = 0);

//
// Create proxy for message input port.
//
// Pass in the instance name in the bridge netlist of
// the transactor and port to which binding is requested.
//
// The binding argument is a callback function and context
// pointer tray. For more details, see the comments in
// scemicommtypes.h by struct SceMiMessageInPortBinding.
//
SceMiMessageInPortProxy*
BindMessageInPort(
    const char* transactorName,
    const char* portName,
    const SceMiMessageInPortBinding* binding = 0,

    SceMiEC* ec = 0);

//
// Create proxy for message output port.
//
// Pass in the instance name in the bridge netlist of
// the transactor and port to which binding is requested.
//
// The binding argument is a callback function and context
// pointer tray. For more details, see the comments in
// scemicommtypes.h by struct SceMiMessageOutPortBinding.
//
SceMiMessageOutPortProxy*
BindMessageOutPort(
    const char* transactorName,
    const char* portName,
    const SceMiMessageOutPortBinding* binding = 0,
    SceMiEC* ec = 0);

//
// Service arriving transactions from the portal.
// Messages enqueued by SceMiMessageOutPortProxy methods, or which are
// are from output transactions that pending dispatch to the
// SceMiMessageOutPortProxy callbacks, may not be handled until
// ServiceLoop() is called. This function returns the # of output
// messages that were dispatched.

```

```

//
// Regarding the service loop handler (aka "g function"):
// If g is NULL, check for transfers to be performed and
// dispatch them returning immediately afterwards. If g is
// non-NULL, enter into a loop of performing transfers and
// calling 'g'. When 'g' returns 0 return from the loop.
// When 'g' is called, an indication of whether there is at
// least 1 message pending will be made with the 'pending' flag.
//
// The user context object pointer is uninterpreted by
// ServiceLoop() and is passed straight to the 'g' function.
//
int
ServiceLoop(
    SceMiServiceLoopHandler g = 0,
    void* context = 0,
    SceMiEC* ec = 0);

//
// Register an error handler which is called in the event
// that an error occurs. If no handler is registered, the
// default error handler is called.
//
static void
RegisterErrorHandler(
    SceMiErrorHandler errorHandler,
    void* context);

//
// Register an info handler which is called in the event
// that a text message needs to be issued. If no handler
// is registered, the message is printed to stdout in
// Ikos message format.
//
static void
RegisterInfoHandler(
    SceMiInfoHandler infoHandler,
    void* context);
};

#endif

```

## E.2 ANSI-C

```
/*
 * scemi.h
 *
 * Copyright © 2003-2007 by Accellera
 * This file is the header file for the SCEMI C API.
 */
#ifndef INCLUDED_SCEMI
#define INCLUDED_SCEMI

typedef void SceMi;
typedef void SceMiParameters;
typedef void SceMiMessageData;
typedef void SceMiMessageInPortProxy;
typedef void SceMiMessageOutPortProxy;

#define SCEMI_MAJOR_VERSION 2
#define SCEMI_MINOR_VERSION 0
#define SCEMI_PATCH_VERSION 0
#define SCEMI_VERSION_STRING "2.0.0"

/* 32 bit unsigned word type for building and reading messages */
typedef unsigned int SceMiU32;

/* 64 bit unsigned word used for CycleStamps */
typedef unsigned long long SceMiU64;

typedef int (*SceMiServiceLoopHandler)(void* context, int pending);

/*
 * struct SceMiEC - SceMi Error Context
 */

typedef enum {
    SceMiOK,
    SceMiError
} SceMiErrorType;

typedef struct {
    const char* Culprit;    /* The offending function */
    const char* Message;   /* Descriptive message describing problem */
    SceMiErrorType Type;   /* Error code describing the nature of the error */
    int Id;                /* A code to uniquely identify each error */
} SceMiEC;

typedef void (*SceMiErrorHandler)(void* context, SceMiEC* ec);

/*
 * struct SceMiIC - SceMi Informational Message Context
 */

typedef enum {
    SceMiInfo,
    SceMiWarning,
    SceMiNonFatalError
} SceMiInfoType;

typedef struct {
    const char* Originator;
    const char* Message;
    SceMiInfoType Type;
}
```

```

    int Id;
} SceMiIC;

typedef void (*SceMiInfoHandler)(void* context, SceMiIC* ic);

/*
 * struct SceMiMessageInPortBinding
 *
 * Description
 * -----
 * This structure defines a tray of callback functions that support
 * propagation of message input readiness back to the software.
 *
 * If an input ready callback is registered (optionally) on a given
 * input port, the port will dispatch the callback whenever becomes
 * ready for more input.
 *
 * Note: All callbacks must take their data and return promptly as they
 * are called possibly deep down in a non-preemptive thread. Typically,
 * the callback might to some minor manipulation to the context object
 * then return and let a suspended thread resume and do the main processing
 * of the received transaction.
 */

typedef struct {
    /*
     * This is the user's context object pointer.
     * The application is free to use this pointer for any purposes it
     * wishes. Neither the class SceMi nor class MessageInputPortProxy do
     * anything with this pointer other than store it and pass it when
     * calling functions.
     */
    void* Context;

    /*
     * Receive a response transaction. This function is called when data
     * from the message output port arrives. This callback acts as a proxy
     * for the message output port of the transactor.
     */
    void (*IsReady)(
        void* context);

    /*
     * This function is called from the MessageInputPortProxy destructor
     * to notify the user code that the reference to the 'context' pointer
     * has been deleted.
     */
    int (*Close)(
        void* context);
} SceMiMessageInPortBinding;

/*
 * struct SceMiMessageOutPortBinding
 *
 * Description
 * -----
 * This structure defines a tray of callback functions are passed to the class
 * SceMi when the application model binds to a message output port proxy and
 * which are called on message receipt and close notification. It is the means
 * by which the MessageOutputPort forwards received transactions to the C model.
 */

```

```

* Note: All callbacks must take their data and return promptly as they
* are called possibly deep down in a non-preemptive thread. Typically,
* the callback might do some minor manipulation to the context object
* then return and let a suspended thread resume and do the main processing
* of the received transaction.
*
* Additionally, the message data passed into the receive callback is
* not guaranteed to remain the same once the callback returns. All
* data therein then must be processed while inside the callback.
*/

typedef struct {
    /*
     * This is the user's context object pointer.
     * The application is free to use this pointer for any purposes it
     * wishes. Neither the class SceMi nor class SceMiMessageOutPortProxy do
     * anything with this pointer other than store it and pass it when
     * calling callback functions Receive and Close.
     */
    void* Context;

    /*
     * Receive a response transaction. This function is called when data
     * from the message output port arrives. This callback acts as a proxy
     * for the message output port of the transactor.
     */
    void (*Receive)(
        void* context,
        const SceMiMessageData* data);

    /*
     * This function is called from the MessageOutputPortProxy destructor
     * to notify the user code that the reference to the 'context' pointer
     * has been deleted.
     */
    int (*Close)(
        void* context);
} SceMiMessageOutPortBinding;

/*
 * Register an error handler which is called in the event
 * that an error occurs. If no handler is registered, the
 * default error handler is called. The errorHandler will
 * pass back the 'context' object registered by the user
 * when making this function call. The system makes no
 * assumptions about the 'context' pointer and will not
 * modify it.
 */
void
SceMiRegisterErrorHandler(
    SceMiErrorHandler errorHandler,
    void* context);

/*
 * Register an info handler which is called in the event
 * that an informational text message needs to be printed.
 * If no handler is registered, the message is printed to stdout.
 */
void SceMiRegisterInfoHandler(
    SceMiInfoHandler infoHandler,
    void* context );

```

```

/*
 * Check version string against supported versions.
 * Return -1 if passed string not supported.
 * Return interface version # if it is supported. This interface
 * version # can be passed to the SceMiInit() function.
 */
int
SceMiVersion(
    const char* versionString);

/*
 * This function wraps constructor of class SceMi. If an instance
 * of class SceMi has been established on a prior call to the
 * the SceMiInit() function, that pointer is returned since a single
 * instance of class SceMi is reusable among all C models.
 *
 * The caller must provide the interface version # it is expecting
 * to work with. If the caller requests an unsupported version,
 *
 * an error is returned.
 *
 * The caller must also provide a pointer to a filled-in SceMiParameters
 * struct that contains global interface specification parameters.
 *
 * Returns NULL if error occurred, check ec for status or register
 * an error callback.
 */
SceMi*
SceMiInit(
    int version,
    const SceMiParameters* parameters,
    SceMiEC* ec);

/*
 * Shut down the specified SCEMI interface.
 */
void
SceMiShutdown(
    SceMi* mctHandle,
    SceMiEC* ec);

/*
 * Create proxy for message input port.
 *
 * The caller must provide the handle to the initialized SceMi system,
 * as well as the name of the transactor and port to which binding
 * is requested.
 *
 * The 'binding' input is a callback function and context pointer tray.
 * See the comments in scemitypes.h for struct SceMiMessageInPortBinding.
 */
SceMiMessageInPortProxy*
SceMiBindMessageInPort(
    SceMi* mctHandle,
    const char* transactorName,
    const char* portName,
    const SceMiMessageInPortBinding* binding,
    SceMiEC* ec);

/*
 * Create proxy for message output port.
 *

```

```

* The caller must provide the handle to the initialized SceMi system,
* as well as the name of the transactor and port to which binding
* is requested.
*
* The 'binding' input is a callback function and context pointer tray.
* See the comments in scemitypes.h for struct SceMiMessageOutPortBinding.
*/
SceMiMessageOutPortProxy*
SceMiBindMessageOutPort(
    SceMi* mctHandle,

    const char* transactorName,
    const char* portName,
    const SceMiMessageOutPortBinding* binding,
    SceMiEC* ec);

/*
* Service arriving transactions from the portal.
* Messages enqueued by SceMiMessageOutPortProxy methods, or which are
* are from output transactions that pending dispatch to the
* SceMiMessageOutPortProxy callbacks, may not be handled until
* ServiceLoop() is called. This function returns the # of output
* messages that were dispatched.
*
* The 'g' input is a pointer to a user-defined service function.
* If g is NULL, check for transfers to be performed and
* dispatch them returning immediately afterwards. If g is
* non-NULL, enter into a loop of performing transfers and
* calling 'g'. When 'g' returns 0 return from the loop.
* When 'g' is called, an indication of whether there is at
* least 1 message pending will be made with the 'pending' flag.
*
* The 'context' input is a user context object pointer.
* This pointer is uninterpreted by the SceMiServiceLoop()
* method and is passed on to the 'g' callback function.
*/
int
SceMiServiceLoop(
    SceMi* mctHandle,
    SceMiServiceLoopHandler g,
    void* context,
    SceMiEC* ec);

SceMiParameters*
SceMiParametersNew(
    const char* paramsFile,
    SceMiEC* ec);

unsigned int
SceMiParametersNumberOfObjects(
    const SceMiParameters* parametersHandle,
    const char* objectKind,
    SceMiEC* ec);

int
SceMiParametersAttributeIntegerValue(
    const SceMiParameters* parametersHandle,
    const char* objectKind,
    unsigned int index,
    const char* attributeName,
    SceMiEC* ec);

```

```

const char*
SceMiParametersAttributeStringValue(

    const SceMiParameters* parametersHandle,
    const char* objectKind,
    unsigned int index,
    const char* attributeName,
    SceMiEC* ec);

void
SceMiParametersOverrideAttributeIntegerValue(
    SceMiParameters* parametersHandle,
    const char* objectKind,
    unsigned int index,
    const char* attributeName,
    int value,
    SceMiEC* ec);

void
SceMiParametersOverrideAttributeStringValue(
    SceMiParameters* parametersHandle,
    const char* objectKind,
    unsigned int index,
    const char* attributeName,
    const char* value,
    SceMiEC* ec);

/*
 * SceMiMessageData initialization function.
 * This is called to construct a new SceMiMessageData object.
 */
SceMiMessageData*
SceMiMessageDataNew(
    const SceMiMessageInPortProxy* messageInPortProxyHandle,
    SceMiEC* ec);

/*
 * Destroy a SceMiMessageData object previously returned from
 * SceMiMessageDataNew.
 */
void
SceMiMessageDataDelete(
    SceMiMessageData* messageDataHandle);

/*
 * Return size of message data array in 32 bit words.
 */
unsigned int
SceMiMessageDataWidthInBits(
    const SceMiMessageData* messageDataHandle);

/*
 * Return size of array in 32 bit words.
 */
unsigned int
SceMiMessageDataWidthInWords(
    const SceMiMessageData* messageDataHandle);

/*
 * Set value of message data word at given index.
 */
void

```

```

SceMiMessageDataSet (
    SceMiMessageData* messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    SceMiU32 word,
    SceMiEC* ec);

/*
 * Set bit in message data word at given index.
 */
void
SceMiMessageDataSetBit (
    SceMiMessageData* messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    int bit,
    SceMiEC* ec);

/*
 * Set bit range in message data word at given index.
 */
void SceMiMessageDataSetBitRange (
    SceMiMessageData* messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    unsigned int range,
    SceMiU32 bits,
    SceMiEC *ec);

/*
 * Return value of message data word at given index.
 */
SceMiU32
SceMiMessageDataGet (
    const SceMiMessageData* messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    SceMiEC* ec);

/*
 * Return value of bit in message data word at given index.
 */
int
SceMiMessageDataGetBit (
    const SceMiMessageData* messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    SceMiEC* ec);

/*
 * Return value of bit range in message data word at given index.
 */
SceMiU32
SceMiMessageDataGetBitRange (

    const SceMiMessageData *messageDataHandle,
    unsigned int i,
    unsigned int range,
    SceMiEC *ec);

/*
 * Get cyclestamp.
 */
SceMiU64
SceMiMessageDataCycleStamp (
    const SceMiMessageData* messageDataHandle);

```

```

/*
 * This method sends a message with the specified payload to the
 * transactor input port. The data will transparently be delivered
 * to the transactor as 1 or more chunks.
 */
void
SceMiMessageInPortProxySend(
    SceMiMessageInPortProxy* messageInPortProxyHandle,
    const SceMiMessageData* messageDataHandle,
    SceMiEC* ec);

const char*
SceMiMessageInPortProxyTransactorName(
    const SceMiMessageInPortProxy* messageInPortProxyHandle);

const char*
SceMiMessageInPortProxyPortName(
    const SceMiMessageInPortProxy* messageInPortProxyHandle);

unsigned int
SceMiMessageInPortProxyPortWidth(
    const SceMiMessageInPortProxy* messageInPortProxyHandle);

const char*
SceMiMessageOutPortProxyTransactorName(
    const SceMiMessageOutPortProxy* messageOutPortProxyHandle);

const char*
SceMiMessageOutPortProxyPortName(
    const SceMiMessageOutPortProxy* messageOutPortProxyHandle);

unsigned int
SceMiMessageOutPortProxyPortWidth(
    const SceMiMessageOutPortProxy* messageOutPortProxyHandle);

#endif

```

## Appendix F: Sample header file for basic transaction-pipes C-Side API

As described in section 5.8, the infrastructure will provide the implementations of the actual built-in functions for the transaction pipes on both the C side and the HDL side. On the HDL side, the pipe functions and tasks in the SystemVerilog interface can be implemented by HDL definitions of built-in functions that perform the operations of the pipe inside. For example a pipe call can call code that does PLI or DPI calls inside the tasks/functions in the SystemVerilog interface definitions. The way pipe functions are defined is up to the implementation but they must have the exact profiles shown in section 5.8.2.

The following is a precise listing of the include file that can be included by the C application to declare the API functions. The name of this file is `scemi_pipes.h`.

```

#ifndef _scemi_pipes_h
#define _scemi_pipes_h

#include "svdpi.h"

#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C" {
#endif

//-----
// scemi_pipe_c_handle()
//
// This function retrieves an opaque handle representing a transaction
// input or output pipe given an HDL scope and a pipe ID.
//-----

void *scemi_pipe_c_handle(          // return: pipe handle
    const char *endpoint_path );    // input: path to HDL endpoint instance

//-----
// scemi_pipe_get_direction()
// scemi_pipe_get_depth()
// scemi_pipe_get_bytes_per_element()
//
// These functions return the direction, depth, and bytes-per-element
// respectively of this pipe instance. These parameters are statically
// determined by parameterizations of the HDL side interface of the pipe.
//-----

svBit scemi_pipe_get_direction( // return: 1 for input pipe, 0 for output pipe
    void *pipe_handle );        // input: pipe handle

int scemi_pipe_get_depth( // return: current depth (in elements) of the pipe
    void *pipe_handle );    // input: pipe handle

int scemi_pipe_get_bytes_per_element( // return: bytes per element
    void *pipe_handle );             // input: pipe handle

//-----
// scemi_pipe_c_send()
//
// This is the basic blocking send function for a transaction input pipe.
// The passed in data is sent to the pipe. If necessary the calling thread
// is suspended until there is room in the pipe.
//
// The eom argument is a flag which is used for the user specified
// end-of-message (eom) indication. It can be used for example to mark the
// end of a frame containing a sequence of transactions.
//
// scemi_pipe_c_receive()
//
// This is the basic blocking receive function for a transaction
// output pipe.
//
// The eom argument for this call is an output argument. It is set to the
// same setting of the flag passed on the ::send() call by the producer
// endpoint of the pipe as described in the standard. Thus it can be used
// by the caller to query whether the current read is one for which an eom
// was specified when the data was sent on the producer endpoint.
//
//-----

```

```

void scemi_pipe_c_send(
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be written
    const svBitVecVal *data, // input: data
    svBit eom );            // input: end-of-message marker flag (and flush)

void scemi_pipe_c_send_bytes(
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be written
    const char *data,        // input: data
    svBit eom );            // input: end-of-message marker flag (and flush)

void scemi_pipe_c_receive(
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be read
    int *num_elements_valid, // output: #elements that are valid
    svBitVecVal *data,       // output: data
    svBit *eom );           // output: end-of-message marker flag (and flush)

void scemi_pipe_c_receive_bytes(
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be read
    int *num_elements_valid, // output: #elements that are valid
    char *data,              // output: data
    svBit *eom );           // output: end-of-message marker flag (and flush)

//-----
// scemi_pipe_c_flush()
//
// Flush pipe data. This function will cause the calling thread to suspend
// until the last element sent to the pipe is confirmed to have been
// received on the HDL side.
//-----

void scemi_pipe_c_flush(
    void *pipe_handle );    // input: pipe handle

//-----
// scemi_pipe_c_try_send()
//
// This is the basic non-blocking send function for a transaction
// input pipe.
//
// The number of elements actually sent is returned. It is possible
// that there is not enough room in the pipe for the entire set of
// requested elements to be sent. In this case the number of elements
// returned will be less than the number requested to be sent, and
// the application may wish continue to retry the send at future points
// in time until all the desired elements are sent. It is possible for
// it to do so without changing the input payload reference by simply
// bumping the byte_offset argument in each new call attempt by the amount
// successfully sent in the previous call.
//
// scemi_pipe_c_try_receive()
//
// This is the basic non-blocking receive function for a transaction
// output pipe.
//
// The number of elements actually received is returned. It is possible
// there are not enough elements in the pipe to satisfy the request.
// In this case the number of elements returned will be less than the
// number requested to be received, and the application may wish continue

```

```

// to retry the receive at future points in time until all the desired
// elements are received. It is possible for it to do so without changing
// the output payload reference by simply bumping the byte_offset argument
// in each new call attempt by the amount successfully received in the
// previous call.
//
//-----

int scemi_pipe_c_try_send(
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,         // input: byte offset within data array
    int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be written
    const svBitVecVal *data, // input: data
    svBit eom );            // input: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_send_bytes(
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,         // input: byte offset within data array
    int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be written
    const char *data,        // input: data
    svBit eom );            // input: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_receive(
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,         // input: byte offset within data array
    int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be read
    svBitVecVal *data,       // output: data
    svBit *eom );           // output: end-of-message marker flag

int scemi_pipe_c_try_receive_bytes(
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    int byte_offset,         // input: byte offset within data array
    int num_elements,        // input: #elements to be read
    char *data,              // output: data
    svBit *eom );           // output: end-of-message marker flag

//-----
// scemi_pipe_c_try_flush()
//
// This is the basic non-blocking flush function for a transaction
// input pipe. A flush is successful if the last element sent to the
// pipe is confirmed to have been received on the HDL side. //
//-----

int scemi_pipe_c_try_flush(
    void *pipe_handle );    // input: pipe handle

//-----
// scemi_pipe_c_in_flush_state()
//-----

svBit scemi_pipe_c_in_flush_state( // return: whether pipe is in Flush state
    void *pipe_handle );       // input: pipe handle

//-----
// scemi_pipe_c_can_send()
//
// This function returns the maximum number of elements that would
// currently fit in the pipe. This number could be passed immediately
// to a call to the ::send() function and it would be guaranteed to return
// immediately without requiring a block. Similarly if it is passed
// immediately to a call to the ::try_send() function it would be
// guaranteed to return the same number of elements requested indicating

```

```

// a successful send of that full number of elements.
//
// scemi_pipe_c_can_receive()
//
// This function returns the maximum number of elements are currently
// visible in the pipe. This number could be passed immediately
// to a call to the ::receive() function and it would be guaranteed to
// return immediately without requiring a block. Similarly if it is passed
// immediately to a call to the ::try_receive() function it would be
// guaranteed to return the same number of elements requested indicating
// a successful receive of that full number of elements.
//-----

int scemi_pipe_c_can_send(
    void *pipe_handle );

int scemi_pipe_c_can_receive(
    void *pipe_handle );

//-----
// Notify callback support
//

typedef void (*scemi_pipe_notify_callback)(
    void *context ); // input: C model context

typedef void *scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle;
// Handle type denoting registered notify callback.

#ifdef __cplusplus

scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback(
    void *pipe_handle, // input: pipe handle
    scemi_pipe_notify_callback notify_callback,
    // input: notify callback function
    void *notify_context, // input: notify context
    int callback_threshold=0 ); // input: threshold for notify callback function

#else // __cplusplus

scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle scemi_pipe_set_notify_callback(
    void *pipe_handle, // input: pipe handle
    scemi_pipe_notify_callback notify_callback,
    // input: notify callback function
    void *notify_context, // input: notify context
    int callback_threshold ); // input: threshold for notify callback function

#endif // __cplusplus

void scemi_pipe_clear_notify_callback(
    scemi_pipe_notify_callback_handle notify_callback_handle );
// input: notify callback handle

void *scemi_pipe_get_notify_context( //return: notify context object pointer
    scemi_pipe_notify_handle notify_callback_handle ); // input: notify handle

//-----
// Per-pipe user data storage support
//

void scemi_pipe_put_user_data(
    void *pipe_handle, // input: pipe handle
    void *user_key, // input: user key

```

```

    void *user_data);          // input: user data

void *scemi_pipe_get_user_data(
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    void *user_key);          // input: user key

//-----
// Autoflush support
//

svBit scemi_pipe_set_eom_auto_flush(
    void *pipe_handle,        // input: pipe handle
    svBit enabled );          // input: enable/disable

#ifdef __cplusplus
} /* extern "C" */
#endif

#endif // _scemi_pipes_h

```

## Appendix G: Sample header file for SCE-MI DMI interface

The SCE-MI direct memory interface (SCE-MI DMI) provides a C-side interface to directly access an HDL-side memory. This interface is defined in 5.9 Direct memory interface.

The following is a precise listing of the include file that can be included by the C application to declare the API functions. The name of this file is `scemi_dmi.h`

```

#ifndef _scemi_dmi_h_
#define _scemi_dmi_h_

#include "svdpi.h"

#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C" {
#endif

//-----
// Configuration and query functions
//-----

void *scemi_mem_c_handle(          // return : HDL-side memory handle
    const char *hdl_path );      // input  : path to the memory

void scemi_mem_get_size(
    void *mem_handle,            // input  : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned int *width,         // output : bit-width of the memory
    unsigned long long *depth ); // output : depth of the memory

//-----
// Block interfaces: get/put a block of HDL memory words
//-----

void scemi_mem_get_block(
    void *mem_handle,           // input  : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input  : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long num_words, // input  : length of data
    void *data );              // input  : user data block

void scemi_mem_put_block(
    void *mem_handle,           // input  : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input  : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long num_words, // input  : length of data
    void *data );              // input  : user data block

void scemi_mem_pattern_fill(
    void *mem_handle,           // input  : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input  : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long num_words, // input  : # of words impacted
    const svBitVecVal *word_pattern ); // input  : pattern to be applied onto
                                        // each memory word

void scemi_mem_clear(
    void *mem_handle );        // input  : HDL-side memory handle

//-----
// Word interfaces: read/write a memory word of an HDL memory
//-----

#ifdef __cplusplus

void scemi_mem_write_word (
    void *mem_handle,          // input  : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input  : memory address (offset)
    const svBitVecVal *data,   // input  : memory word
    unsigned char *byte_enable_buf, // input  : byte enable buffer
    unsigned int flush = 0);   // input  : flush write buffer

#else // __cplusplus

void scemi_mem_write_word (
    void *mem_handle,          // input  : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input  : memory address (offset)
    const svBitVecVal *data,   // input  : memory word
    unsigned char *byte_enable_buf, // input  : byte enable buffer
    unsigned int flush );      // input  : flush write buffer

#endif // __cplusplus

void scemi_mem_read_word (

```

```

    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_word_offset, // input : memory address (offset)
    svBitVecVal *data,         // output : memory word
    unsigned long long pre_fetch); // input : number of words to pre-fetch

//-----
// Byte interfaces: get/put a block of bytes from/to HDL memory
//-----

void scemi_mem_get_block_of_bytes(
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_byte_offset, // input : memory byte address
    unsigned long long num_bytes, // input : length of data in bytes
    void *data );              // output : user data block

void scemi_mem_put_block_of_bytes(
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    unsigned long long mem_byte_offset, // input : memory address (offset)
    unsigned long long num_bytes, // input : length of data
    void *data );              // input : user data block

//-----
// File interfaces: read/write data from/to file
//-----

#ifdef __cplusplus

void scemi_mem_read_file(           // $readmem(h/b) equivalent
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    char *file_name,           // input : content file
    svBit is_data_hex = 1,      // input : hex vs binary data
    signed long long start_addr = -1, // input: starting word address of range
    signed long long end_addr = -1 ); // input: ending word address of range

void scemi_mem_write_file(         // $readmem(h/b) equivalent
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    char *file_name,           // input : content file
    svBit is_data_hex = 1,      // input : hex vs binary data
    signed long long start_addr = -1, // input: starting word address of range
    signed long long end_addr = -1 ); // input: ending word address of range

#else // __cplusplus

void scemi_mem_read_file(           // $readmem(h/b) equivalent
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    char *file_name,           // input : content file
    bool is_data_hex,          // input : hex vs binary data
    signed long long start_addr, // input: starting word address of range
    signed long long end_addr );   // input: ending word address of range

void scemi_mem_write_file(         // $readmem(h/b) equivalent
    void *mem_handle,           // input : HDL-side memory handle
    char *file_name,           // input : content file
    bool is_data_hex,          // input : hex vs binary data
    signed long long start_addr, // input: starting word address of range
    signed long long end_addr );   // input: ending word address of range

#endif // __cplusplus

#endif // __cplusplus

#endif // _scemi_dmi_h_

```

## Appendix H: Bibliography

*(informative)*

- [B1] The IEEE Standard Dictionary of Electrical and Electronics Terms, Sixth Edition. (1997)
- [B2] SystemC, Version 2.0 User's Guide, [www.systemc.org](http://www.systemc.org).
- [B3] Standard Co-Emulation Modeling Interface (SCE-MI) Reference Manual - Version 1.1.0 - January 13th, 2005 - Accellera ITC
- [B4] IEEE Std. 1800-2012: Standard for SystemVerilog: Unified Hardware Design, Specification and Verification Language - SystemVerilog Language Working Group Design Automation Standards Committee IEEE Computer Society
- [B5] Using SystemVerilog Now with DPI - Rich Edelman, Doug Warmke
- [B6] Integrating SystemC Models with Verilog and SystemVerilog Models Using the SystemVerilog Direct Programming Interface [DPI] - Stuart Sutherland, Sutherland HDL, Inc.
- [B7] Accellera Universal Verification Methodology (UVM) Reference Implementation Version 1.2 – June 2014